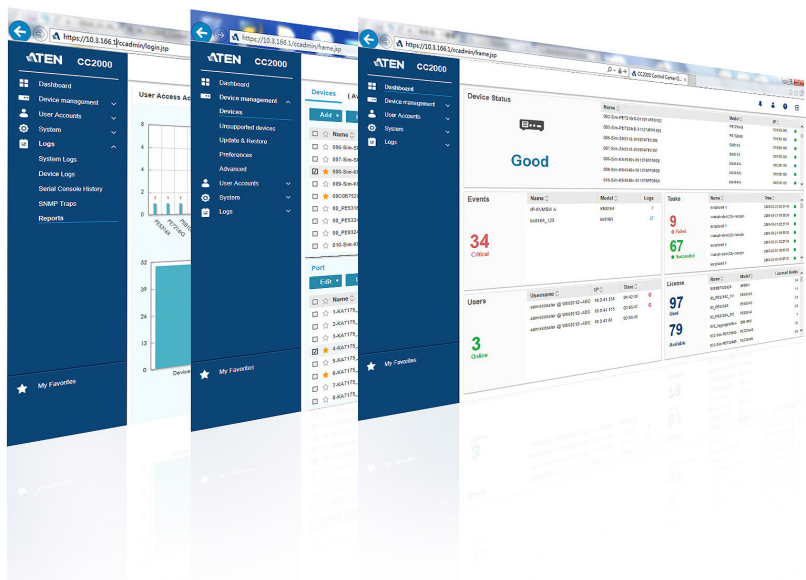




CC2000 Centralized Management Software User Manual



User Information

Online Registration

Be sure to register your product at our online support center:

| | |
|---------------|---|
| International | http://eservice.aten.com |
|---------------|---|

Telephone Support

For telephone support, call this number:

| | |
|---------------|---|
| International | 886-2-8692-6959 |
| China | 86-400-810-0-810 |
| Japan | 81-3-5615-5811 |
| Korea | 82-2-467-6789 |
| North America | 1-888-999-ATEN ext 4988 1-949-428-1111 |

User Notice

All information, documentation, and specifications contained in this manual are subject to change without prior notification by the manufacturer. The manufacturer makes no representations or warranties, either expressed or implied, with respect to the contents hereof and specifically disclaims any warranties as to merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose. Any of the manufacturer's software described in this manual is sold or licensed *as is*. Should the programs prove defective following their purchase, the buyer (and not the manufacturer, its distributor, or its dealer), assumes the entire cost of all necessary servicing, repair and any incidental or consequential damages resulting from any defect in the software.

The manufacturer of this system is not responsible for any radio and/or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this device. It is the responsibility of the user to correct such interference.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any damage incurred in the operation of this system if the correct operational voltage setting was not selected prior to operation. PLEASE VERIFY THAT THE VOLTAGE SETTING IS CORRECT BEFORE USE.

Package Contents

The CC2000 package consists of:

- 1 CC2000 USB License Key
- 1 Software CD

Check to make sure that all of the components are present and in good order. If anything is missing, or was damaged in shipping, contact your dealer.

Read this manual thoroughly and follow the installation and operation procedures carefully to prevent any damage to the server or to any other devices on the server.

Copyright © 2008–2020 ATEN® International Co., Ltd.

Manual Date: 2020/01/09

Altusen and the Altusen logo are registered trademarks of ATEN International Co., Ltd. All rights reserved. All other brand names and trademarks are the registered property of their respective owners.

Contents

| | |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| User Information | ii |
| Online Registration | ii |
| Telephone Support | ii |
| User Notice | ii |
| Package Contents | iii |
| About this Manual | xii |
| Overview | xii |
| Conventions | xiii |
| Product Information | xiii |
| Important Note about Firmware | xiv |

Chapter 1. Introduction

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Overview | 1 |
| Features | 3 |
| Requirements | 5 |
| Server Requirements | 5 |
| Client Requirements | 6 |
| Hardware Requirements | 6 |
| Operating Systems | 6 |
| Browsers | 7 |
| Device Requirements | 7 |
| Licenses | 8 |
| Nodes | 8 |
| Secondaries | 8 |

Chapter 2. Server Installation and Utilities

| | |
|--|----|
| Overview | 9 |
| Switching to CC2000 v3.0 | 9 |
| Stop CC2000 Service | 10 |
| Windows Version Installation | 12 |
| Before You Begin | 12 |
| Starting the Installation | 12 |
| Post-installation Check | 18 |
| Linux Version Installation | 19 |
| Before you Begin 19 | |
| Installing | 20 |
| Post-installation Check | 21 |
| Post-Installation Setup | 21 |
| Uninstalling the CC2000 | 22 |
| Uninstalling from a Windows System | 22 |
| Uninstalling from a Linux System | 22 |
| Upgrading the CC2000 | 23 |
| Preliminary Steps | 23 |
| CC2000 Secondary Servers | 24 |

| | |
|--|----|
| CC2000 Redundant Secondary Servers | 24 |
| Database Migration Utility | 25 |
| Before you begin | 25 |
| Migrating the Database | 25 |
| Notes About the Migration | 28 |

Chapter 3. Browser Operation

| | |
|-----------------------------|----|
| Logging In | 29 |
| The Interface | 31 |
| Screen Components | 31 |
| My Favorites | 33 |
| Add Favorites | 33 |
| Remove Favorites | 34 |
| Recent | 35 |
| Message Box | 36 |
| Inbox | 36 |
| Sent | 38 |
| Drafts | 39 |
| Chat | 40 |

Chapter 4. Dashboard and Basic Operation

| | |
|--|----|
| Overview | 41 |
| Device Status | 42 |
| Events | 43 |
| Tasks | 44 |
| Users | 45 |
| License | 46 |
| Basic Operations | 47 |
| Filter | 47 |
| Search | 48 |
| Table Headings | 49 |
| Edit / Further Options | 49 |
| Modifications on Interactive Display Panel | 49 |

Chapter 5. Device Management

| | |
|--------------------------------------|----|
| Overview | 51 |
| Preliminary Procedures | 52 |
| Using VPN | 52 |
| Devices | 53 |
| Table Headings | 56 |
| Adding Device | 58 |
| Adding ATEN KVM | 58 |
| Adding ATEN PDU | 62 |
| Adding an APC PDU | 65 |
| Adding a Virtual Host | 68 |
| Adding a Blade Chassis | 72 |
| Adding an Aggregate Device | 76 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Adding a Generic Device | 81 |
| Adding a Group Device | 82 |
| Auto Discovery | 84 |
| Search by IP | 85 |
| Editing Devices | 88 |
| Access rights | 88 |
| Device Setting | 94 |
| Properties | 94 |
| All Nodes Properties | 95 |
| Deleting Devices | 95 |
| More | 96 |
| Transfer Settings | 96 |
| Category Management | 97 |
| Locking / Unlocking Devices | 98 |
| Diagnose & Fix | 99 |
| Go to Associate | 99 |
| Operation | 100 |
| Get Status | 100 |
| Shutdown | 100 |
| Force Off | 100 |
| Restart | 100 |
| Force Restart | 100 |
| On | 100 |
| CC Viewer / KVM Viewer / SN Viewer | 100 |
| Web Access | 107 |
| Power ON / OFF | 107 |
| SSH / Telnet Session | 107 |
| Panel Array Mode | 108 |
| SPM Session | 109 |
| Ports | 112 |
| Launch Viewer | 112 |
| Unsupported Devices | 113 |
| Update & Restore | 115 |
| Firmware Upgrade | 116 |
| Upload a File to Upgrade | 116 |
| Upgrade Redfish-enabled Device | 117 |
| Upgrade with Firmware Repository | 118 |
| Firmware Repository | 119 |
| Adding Firmware Files | 120 |
| Deleting Firmware Files | 120 |
| Backup Configuration | 121 |
| Restore Configuration | 122 |
| Restore | 122 |
| Delete | 123 |
| Preferences | 124 |
| Device/Port Alias | 124 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Serial Ports Broadcast | 126 |
| Misc | 127 |
| Advanced | 128 |
| General | 128 |
| Default Access Rights | 129 |
| System Broadcast | 129 |
| Broadcast IP address and port number to the devices | 129 |
| Broadcast changed IP address and port number to the devices | 130 |
| Device Sync | 131 |

Chapter 6. User Accounts

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Overview | 133 |
| Users | 134 |
| User | 134 |
| Add User | 134 |
| Edit User | 137 |
| Delete User | 139 |
| User Types | 139 |
| System User Types | 140 |
| Custom User Types | 140 |
| Delete User Type | 141 |
| Groups 142 | |
| Groups Tab | 142 |
| Add Group | 142 |
| Edit Group | 144 |
| Delete Group | 145 |
| Domain Groups tab | 146 |
| Add Domain Group | 146 |
| Authentication Services | 148 |
| Add Authentication Services | 149 |
| Server Information | 150 |
| CC2000 Authentication | 154 |
| Delete an Authentication Server | 155 |

Chapter 7. System

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Overview | 157 |
| System Info | 158 |
| General | 158 |
| Time | 159 |
| Server IPs | 160 |
| Notification | 161 |
| SMTP | 161 |
| SNMP Traps | 163 |
| Syslog | 164 |
| Advanced | 165 |
| Adding Notification Settings | 166 |
| Edit Notification Settings | 167 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Testing Event Notifications | 167 |
| Deleting Notification Settings | 168 |
| SNMP | 169 |
| SNMP Agent | 169 |
| SNMP Manager | 171 |
| Security | 173 |
| Access Protection | 173 |
| IP Filtering | 173 |
| MAC Filtering | 174 |
| Virtual Media Security Filters | 175 |
| Single Sign On Settings | 175 |
| Certificate | 176 |
| Changing a Self-Signed Certificate | 177 |
| Importing a Signed SSL Server Certificate | 179 |
| Import Private Key and Certificate | 180 |
| Disclaimer | 181 |
| License | 182 |
| Updating the License | 182 |
| License Sharing | 183 |
| License Conflict | 184 |
| Task Manager | 185 |
| Add | 186 |
| Backup Primary Server Database | 187 |
| Power Control a Device | 189 |
| Auto upgrade with latest device firmware | 190 |
| Upgrade device firmware | 192 |
| Backup Device Configuration | 193 |
| Export Event Logs | 194 |
| Export Device Logs | 195 |
| Export serial console history | 198 |
| Editing a Task | 200 |
| Run Now | 200 |
| Deleting a Task | 200 |
| Replicate Database | 201 |
| VMware Settings | 202 |
| VMRC Plugin | 202 |
| Installing Xterm | 202 |
| Redundant Servers | 203 |
| Primary/Secondary Servers | 203 |
| View Properties | 204 |
| Register | 205 |
| Primary Server View | 206 |
| Secondary Server View | 206 |
| Advanced | 208 |
| Login policy | 208 |
| Lockout Policy | 208 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| User role restriction policy | 209 |
| Power control. | 209 |

Chapter 8.Logs

| | |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Overview | 211 |
| System Logs | 212 |
| System Logs | 212 |
| Export | 213 |
| Import. | 214 |
| Print | 215 |
| Options | 215 |
| Device Logs | 218 |
| Device Logs. | 218 |
| Export | 219 |
| Options | 219 |
| Serial Console History | 221 |
| Serial Console History. | 221 |
| Export | 223 |
| Print | 223 |
| Options | 224 |
| SNMP Traps | 225 |
| SNMP Traps | 225 |
| Export | 225 |
| Print | 226 |
| Options | 226 |
| Reports | 228 |
| User Access Activity | 228 |
| Device Access. | 229 |
| Port Access | 231 |
| Asset Statistics | 232 |
| Options | 233 |

Technical Information

| | |
|--|-----|
| License Agreement | 235 |
| 1. DEFINITIONS:. | 235 |
| 2. GRANT OF RIGHTS: | 235 |
| 3. LIMITED WARRANTY. | 236 |
| 4. Limitation of Liability. | 237 |
| 5. Export Regulations. | 237 |
| 6. TERMINATION:. | 238 |
| 7. MISCELLANEOUS:. | 238 |
| Technical Support | 239 |
| International | 239 |
| North America | 239 |
| USB Authentication Key Specifications. | 239 |
| Supported Aten/Altusen Products | 240 |
| Device ANMS Settings | 240 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| VPNs | 241 |
| Firewalls | 242 |
| CC2000 Proxy Function | 243 |
| Name, Description and Range Parameters | 244 |
| Trusted Certificates | 247 |
| Overview | 247 |
| Adding ARM-based PE series PDU | 248 |
| Troubleshooting | 250 |
| Self-Signed Private Certificates | 255 |
| Examples | 255 |
| Importing the Files | 255 |

The CC2000 Utility

| | |
|-----------------------|-----|
| Overview | 257 |
| System Settings | 258 |
| Restore | 259 |
| View License | 260 |

Authentication Key Utility

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| Overview | 261 |
| Key Status Information | 261 |
| Key Utilities | 261 |
| Key Firmware Upgrade | 262 |
| Starting the Upgrade | 262 |
| Upgrade Succeeded | 265 |
| Key License Upgrade | 266 |
| Overview | 266 |
| Online Upgrade | 267 |
| Upgrade Succeeded | 271 |
| Offline Upgrade | 272 |
| Preliminary Steps | 272 |
| Performing the Upgrade | 273 |
| Offline Upgrade Failure | 278 |
| Order Expiration | 279 |

External Authentication Services

| | |
|--|-----|
| Overview | 281 |
| Approved Services | 281 |
| LDAP/LDAPS – OpenLDAP Setting Example | 281 |
| Active Directory Settings Example | 283 |
| RADIUS Settings Example | 284 |
| TACACS+ Settings Example | 286 |
| NT Domain Settings Example | 288 |
| LDAP Group Authorization Setting Examples | 289 |
| Example 1 | 289 |
| Example 2 | 291 |
| Active Directory Group Authorization Setting Example | 294 |

SSO HTML Sample Codes

Overview297

SSO HTML Sample Codes297

About this Manual

This User Manual is provided to help you get the most from your CC2000 system. It covers all aspects of installation, configuration and operation. An overview of the information found in the manual is provided below.

Generally speaking, chapters 1, 3, and 4 are sufficient for basic users. The other chapters and appendixes are only required for specialized user types. For example, System Administrators, should read the entire manual; Device Administrators, chapters 6 and 8; User Managers, chapter 7. Custom user types will want to read the chapters appropriate to their assigned roles.

Overview

Chapter 1, Introduction, introduces you to the CC2000 System. Its purpose, features and benefits are presented, and its front and back panel components are described.

Chapter 2, Server Installation and Utilities, provides step-by-step instructions for installing the CC2000 on both a Windows and Linux system.

Chapter 3, Browser Operation, explains how to log into the CC2000 with a browser, and describes how to work with the CC2000's browser GUI interface.

Chapter 4, Dashboard and Basic Operation, explains the dashboard of the CC2000 server and goes over the basic operation when using the interface.

Chapter 5, Device Management, explains how to access, control, add, configure, and organize the devices that will be managed over the CC2000 network.

Chapter 6, User Accounts, describes how to: add, modify and delete user accounts; create user groups and assign users to them; specify device access rights for users and groups; and specify the user authentication method.

Chapter 7, System, provides an overview of the CC2000 organizational concept, and demonstrates how to deploy, configure, and manage the CC2000 primary and secondary servers on your installation.

Chapter 8, Logs, explains the CC2000's logging function and how to access, filter, and search the various logs that are kept by the CC2000.

Appendix A, Technical Information, provides technical as well as troubleshooting information.

Appendix B, The CC2000 Utility, shows how to configure a number of the CC2000's parameters from the desktop of the computer that the CC2000 runs on, without having to invoke the browser GUI.


Appendix C, Authentication Key Utility, describes how to access and update the information contained in the CC2000 Authentication Key.

Appendix D, External Authentication Services, discusses the use of authentication via external third party services. It also provides examples of configuring OpenLDAP for CC2000 authentication, and configuring RADIUS for CC2000 authentication in a Linux environment.

Appendix E, SSO HTML Sample Codes, provides sample codes for the Single Sign-On function.

Conventions

This manual uses the following conventions:

| | |
|---|--|
| Monospaced | Indicates text that you should key in. |
| [] | Indicates keys you should press. For example, [Enter] means to press the Enter key. If keys need to be chorded, they appear together in the same bracket with a plus sign between them: [Ctrl+Alt]. |
| 1. | Numbered lists represent procedures with sequential steps. |
| ◆ | Bullet lists provide information, but do not involve sequential steps. |
| → | Indicates selecting the option (on a menu or dialog box, for example), that comes next. For example, Start → Run means to open the <i>Start</i> menu, and then select <i>Run</i> . |
|  | Indicates critical information. |

Product Information

For information about all Altusen products and how they can help you connect without limits, visit Altusen on the Web or contact an Altusen Authorized Reseller. Visit Altusen on the Web for a list of locations and telephone numbers:

| | |
|---------------|---|
| International | http://www.aten.com |
|---------------|---|

Important Note about Firmware

Due to database changes that have been made with a previous firmware release (V2.8.xxx), this version of CC2000 (v3.x.xxx) is not compatible with any previous CC2000 releases and will run as another application. For details, refer to Chapter 2.

Chapter 1

Introduction

Overview

ATEN's CC2000 Centralized Management Software provides IT Teams in every industry with a comprehensive solution that enables central management of their IT infrastructure locally and worldwide through a single portal. The software consolidates the management of all ATEN KVM over IP switches, serial console servers, ATEN PDU and third party devices such as embedded service processors, blade servers and virtual machines for in-band and out-of-band management. The brand new CC2000 provides an easy-to-use yet robust interface – making system management more efficient and productive.

Featuring concise and intuitive HTML 5-based web interface, the CC2000 delivers a better user experience and advanced usability. By utilizing consolidated data, task-based navigation, and simplified menus, administrators can access, configure, and manage all of the IT equipments with ease.

The CC2000 also features a consolidated portal, the Dashboard, to help IT staff quickly attain a full grasp of all the important information and to complete monitoring tasks with minimal effort and time. The Dashboard displays an at-a-glance overview of device status, device events, task results, online users, and licensed nodes usage. With the device status and device events sections, administrators can be immediately notified about the condition of the connected devices, as well as quickly receiving the generated critical logs. The task results section delivers vital messages about operation success or failure. Administrators can also view details of currently logged-in users and terminate suspicious user sessions. The Dashboard's enhanced notification functionality helps users to promptly handle issues and fix problems efficiently.

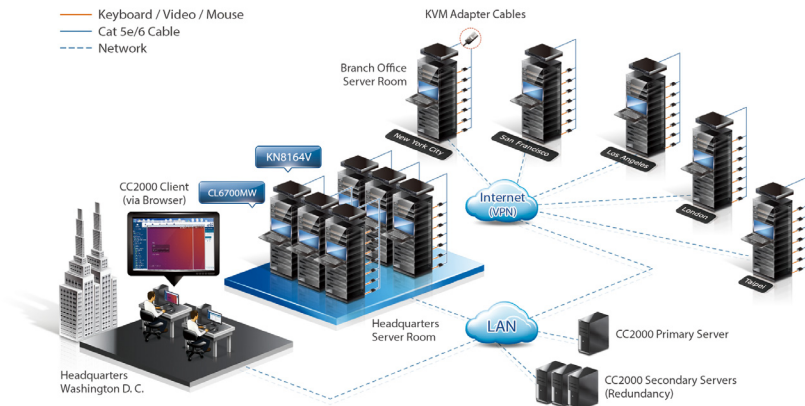
The CC2000's patented Panel DynaArray™ mode lets administrators view the output of multiple ports in individual panels on the same screen. The panel configuration can combine the ports from different over-IP KVM devices and give administrators a flexible choice-to select which devices they wish to monitor and how the ports appear on the screen. Ports can be accessed and managed simply by clicking on the panel it is displayed in.

The CC2000 Centralized Management Software uses Primary-Secondary architecture to offer service redundancy. When the Primary CC2000 server goes down, the CC2000 management system will keep functioning since one of Secondary units can provide the required management services until the

Primary unit is back online. This feature ensures that you are able to access all your devices whenever required.

With the help of the CC2000, users can promptly handle issues and fix problems efficiently. As a secure and centralized system management solution, the CC2000 software meets the requirements of IT administrators in centralized management and easy monitoring, putting them in complete control of their data centers, server rooms and branch offices wherever they are deployed.

Deployment Example:



Features

- ♦ Single sign-on to consolidate the management of ATEN's KVM over IP switches, serial console servers, intelligent PDUs, and third party devices such as embedded service processors, and physical and virtual servers
- ♦ Intuitive User Interface with HTML5 to deliver friendly user experience
- ♦ At-a-glance Dashboard portal to display an overview of the device status, device events, task results, online users, and licensed nodes usage
- ♦ Flexible remote access through service processors and IP tools including Dell iDRAC5/6/8, IBM RSA II, HP iLO2/3/5, Dell CMC, IBM AMM, HP OA, IPMI, IMM and RDP, VNC, SSH, and Telnet
- ♦ Supports access and control to virtualized environment over VMware vSphere 5.5/6.0/6.5 Windows Server 2008, 2012 & 2016, or Citrix XenServer 6.5
- ♦ Supports management of APC PDUs (AP79xx, AP89xx, and AP86xx)
- ♦ Supports LDAP, AD, Kerberos, RADIUS and TACACS+ for centralized authentication and authorization · Centralized role-based policy for user access privilege control
- ♦ Military level encryption (AES 256-bit) for secure end-to-end node access
- ♦ Access control to grant or restrict user access by IP or MAC address, and SAS 70 compliance for configurable failed login attempts and lockout
- ♦ Supports certificates signed from third-party authorities (CA)
- ♦ TLS v1.2 data encryption and RSA 2048-bit certificates to secure user logins from browser
- ♦ Supports strong user password policy to enhance the security of user accounts
- ♦ Consolidates logs from ATEN's KVM over IP switches, serial console servers, and other devices through syslog protocol for audit trail
- ♦ Universal virtual media support for easy software deployment (mount ISO image, boot, or upgrade the device remotely)
- ♦ Event notification support through email, SNMP (v1, v2c, v3), and Syslog
- ♦ Task scheduling for backing up CC2000 database and configuration, exporting logs, and controlling power on/off on PDU devices
- ♦ Message Box — shows internal system messages or critical logs that can be viewed in full detail with just one simple click.

- ♦ Panel Array Mode – allows administrators to monitor multiple video outputs of remote servers in one screen
- ♦ Mouse DynaSync – automatically synchronizes the local and remote mouse cursors
- ♦ Delivers server redundancy through primary/secondary architecture for service availability
- ♦ Quick device access and management – go to **Recent** and **My Favorite** side menus to see and manage a list of recently visited and bookmarked devices, respectively
- ♦ Online Chat – Instant communication and collaboration between users (e.g. for quick problem troubleshoot)

Requirements

Server Requirements

Systems that the CC2000 server will be installed on should meet the following requirements:

- ♦ Hardware Requirements
 - ♦ CPU: Pentium 4, 2.60 GHz or later
 - ♦ Memory: At least 512MB (1GB or more recommended)
 - ♦ Hard drive: 500MB or more free space
 - ♦ Ethernet: At least 1 Ethernet adapter (100Mbps or higher) – Giga LAN recommended
- ♦ Operating System Requirements
 - ♦ Windows: Server 2008, Server 2012, Windows Vista, Windows 8, Windows 10 or Server 2016 with Java Runtime Environment (JRE) 8 or later (with the latest service package for each installed)
 - ♦ Linux (with Java Runtime Environment (JRE) 8 or later)
 - ♦ Red Hat Enterprise Linux V. 4
 - ♦ Novell SUSE Enterprise Server 9 and 10
 - ♦ Ubuntu 15.10 x64
 - ♦ Ubuntu 15.10 x86
 - ♦ Debian 8.2 x64
 - ♦ Fedora 23 x64
 - ♦ Fedora 23 x86
 - ♦ OpenSUSE 13.1 x64
 - ♦ CentOS 7 x64

Client Requirements

Hardware Requirements

- ♦ CPU: We recommend that the computers used to access the switch have at least a Pentium 4 2GHz processor, with their screen resolution set to 1024 x 768.
- ♦ Memory: At least 512MB (1GB or more recommended)
- ♦ Ethernet: At least 1 Ethernet adapter – 10Mbps or higher – 100Mbps recommended
- ♦ Browsers must support 128 bit SSL encryption.
- ♦ For the browser-based Java Web Start (JNLP) Viewer the latest version of the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) must be installed.
- ♦ At least 205MB of memory must be available for the first viewer after logging in from the browser and 100MB for each additional viewer that is opened, thereafter.

Operating Systems

- ♦ Supported operating systems for client workstations that connect to the CC2000 are shown in the table below:

| OS | | Version |
|---------|---------------------|--------------------|
| Windows | | 7 or later |
| Linux | RedHat | 7.1 or later |
| | Fedora | Core 2 or later |
| | SuSE | 9.0 or later |
| | Mandriva (Mandrake) | 9.0 or later |
| UNIX | AIX | 4.3 or later |
| | FreeBSD | 4.2 or later |
| | Sun | Solaris 8 or later |

- ♦ Supported operating systems for users that log into the CC2000 include Windows 2000 or later, and those capable of running the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) 8 or later.

Note: The Windows 2000 Client does not support the WinClient Viewer.

Browsers

Supported browsers for users logging into the CC2000 include the following:

| Browser | | Version |
|---------|---------|-------------|
| IE | | 11 or later |
| Edge | | 40 or later |
| Chrome | | 56 or later |
| Firefox | Windows | 60 or later |
| | Linux | 60 or later |
| | Sun | 52 or later |
| Safari | Mac | 10 or later |
| Opera | | 57 or later |

Device Requirements

All ATEN/Altusen IP products must be at a firmware level that contains the CC Management function, and the CC Management function must be enabled. Download and install the latest version of the relevant firmware from our Website, if necessary. For details on upgrading the firmware see *Update & Restore* on page 115.

-
- Note:** 1. Devices must be configured to communicate on the same port that you configure for the CC2000's Device Port (see *Device port*, page 15).
2. For a list of supported devices refer to the ATEN website.
-

Licenses

The CC2000 license controls the number of Secondary servers and nodes permitted on the CC2000 server installation. License information is contained on the USB License Key that came with your CC2000 purchase.

Upon completion of the CC2000 server software installation, a default license for one primary (no secondaries), and 16 nodes is automatically provided. To add anything more (secondary servers and nodes), you must upgrade the license. see *License* on page 182, for detailed information.

Nodes

- ♦ A node can either be a physical port, or an aggregate device. Each node requires a license.

Aggregate devices can be created when a device (router, server, Ethernet switch, etc.) managed through the CC2000 is capable of being accessed through several ATEN/Altusen device ports*. By consolidating those ports into a single Aggregate Device, the Aggregate Device counts as a single node, and only requires a single license.

Note: Maximum of 2 KVM ports, 2 serial ports and 8 outlet ports.

Ports on ATEN/Altusen devices, when not part of an aggregate device, must be unlocked (see *Locking / Unlocking Devices*, page 98) in order to be used. Each unlocked port counts as one node.

- ♦ Generic devices (routers, switches, etc.) are not counted.
- ♦ Direct Web Access devices are not counted.
- ♦ Group Devices do not count as nodes. They are made up of unlocked physical ports that are grouped together. The same physical port can be added to more than one Group device, but it only requires one node license no matter how many Group devices it is added to.

Note: See *Devices* on page 53 for detailed information on each of the device categories.

Secondaries

The license specifies how many secondaries you can register with the primary CC2000. See *CC2000 Secondary Servers*, page 24 for details regarding registering a Secondary with a primary.

Chapter 2

Server Installation and Utilities

Overview

Recognizing the increasing importance of Linux in the server environment, the CC2000 Centralized Management Software system makes the CC2000's management services available on both the Windows and Linux platforms. This chapter describes how to install the CC2000 server on each of them.

Switching to CC2000 v3.0

CC2000 v3.0 will run as a new application in the system and does not support the upgrading from v2.8 or previous versions.

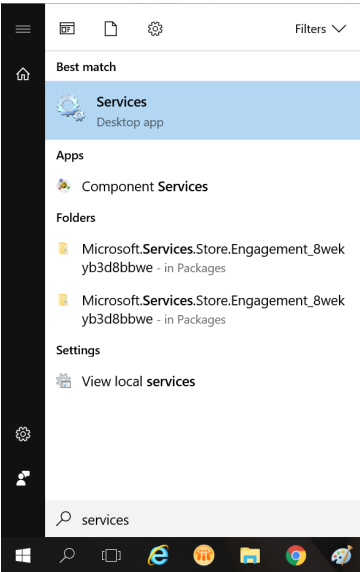
If you wish to install CC2000 v3.0 on the same computer as CC2000 v2.8, you must first stop CC2000 v2.8 service first by referring to *Stop CC2000 Service* on page 10, and follow the instructions in *Windows Version Installation* on page 12 (or *Linux Version Installation* on page 19) to install CC2000 v3.0.

-
- Note:**
1. Only one CC2000 primary server can be present in the same local area network. If you have different versions of CC2000 primary servers active, refer to *Stop CC2000 Service* on page 10 to stop the unwanted service.
 2. You can use the serial number/USB license key of CC2000 v2.8 for CC2000 v3.0 installation/license upgrade.
-

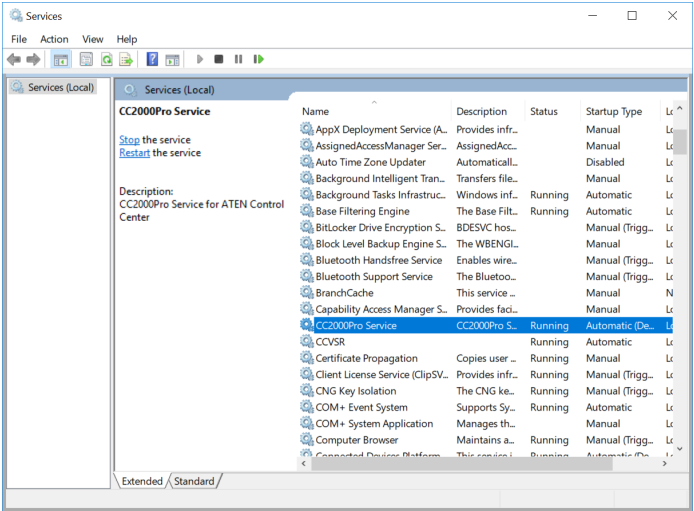
Stop CC2000 Service

Follow the steps below to stop a service:

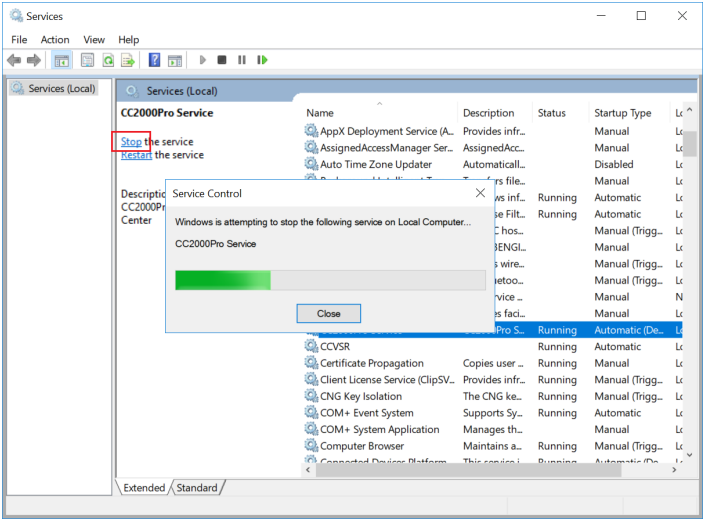
1. On your windows desktop, search for the keyword *Services* and click to start this desktop app.



2. Click to select the CC2000 service.



3. Click *Stop* to stop the service.



Note: Service name for CC2000 v2.8 is *CC2000 Service*. Service name for CC2000 v3.0 is *CC2000Pro Service*.

Windows Version Installation

Before You Begin

Before running the installation program, make sure that Sun's Java Runtime Environment (JRE) 8 or higher has been installed on your system. If not, you will first need to download and install it. You can find the latest version on Java's official web site:

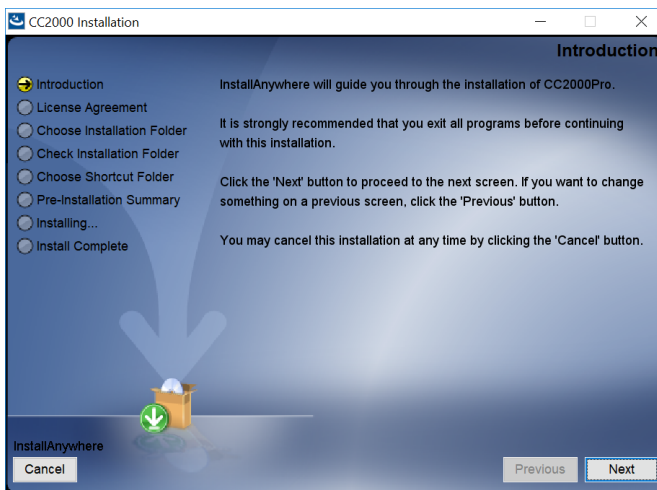
<http://java.com>

After JRE has been installed on your system, you will be ready to install the CC2000 program.

Starting the Installation

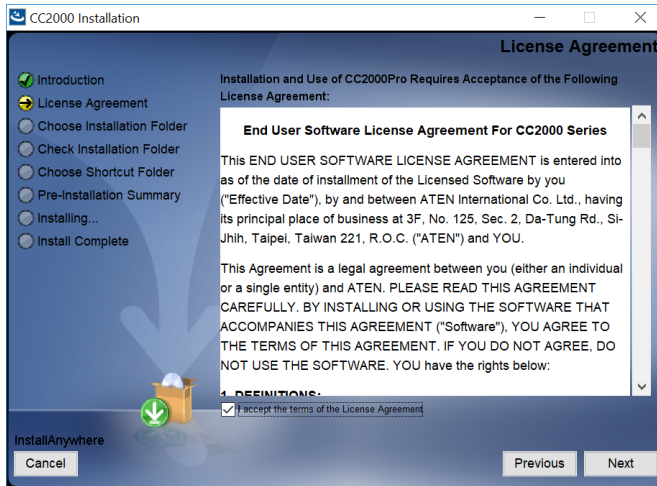
To install CC2000 on a Windows system, do the following:

1. Put the software CD that came with your package into the computer's CD or DVD drive.
2. Go to the folder where the installation file (e.g. *CC2000_Setup_V3.0.0_ForWindows.exe*) is located and execute it. The installer will appear as shown below:

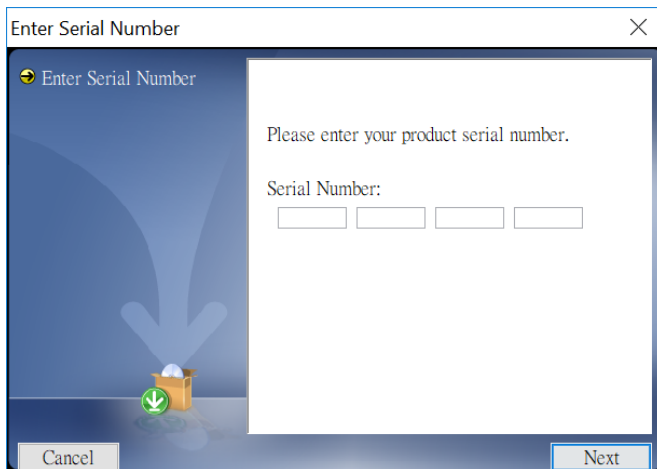


Click **Next** to continue.

- The installer will display the License Agreement. Read it and should you accept, click to check *I accept terms of the License Agreement*. Click *Next* to continue.



- The installer will prompt you to enter a serial number. Key in the CC2000's software serial number (the serial number can be found on the CD case) and click *Next* to continue.

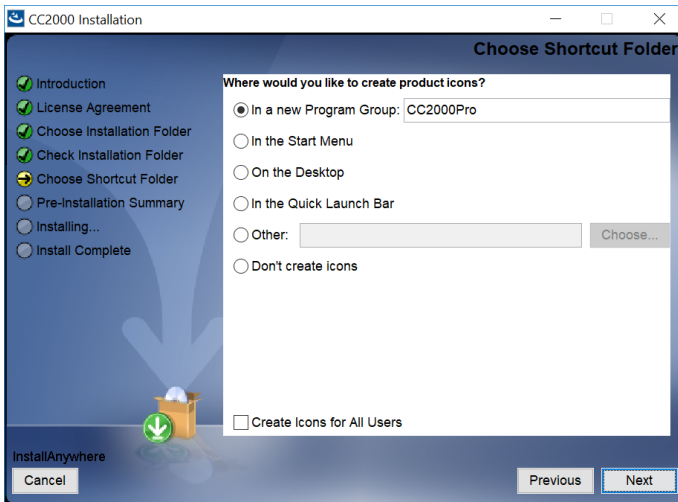


Note: We recommend that you save your software serial number in a safe place in case you need to use it for reinstallation.

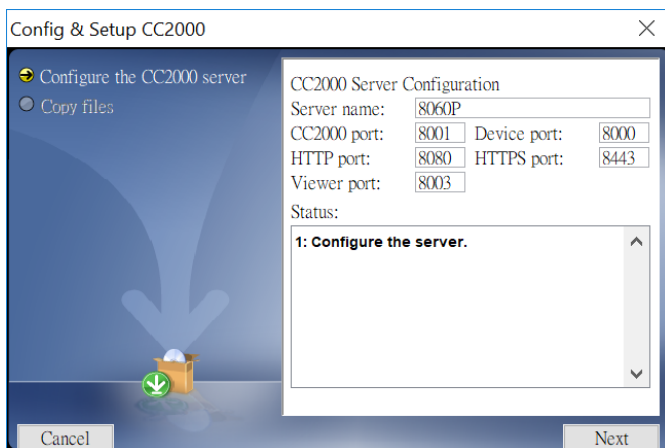
- The installer will bring you to the *Choose Installation Folder* page and ask you to specify the CC2000's installation folder. If you don't want to use the default entry, click **Choose...** to browse and select the location, click *Next* to continue.



- In the *Choose Shortcut Folder* dialog box, click the radio buttons to specify where you would like to create product icons. Click *Next* to continue.



7. In the Configuration dialog box, fill in the fields according to the information provided in the table below.



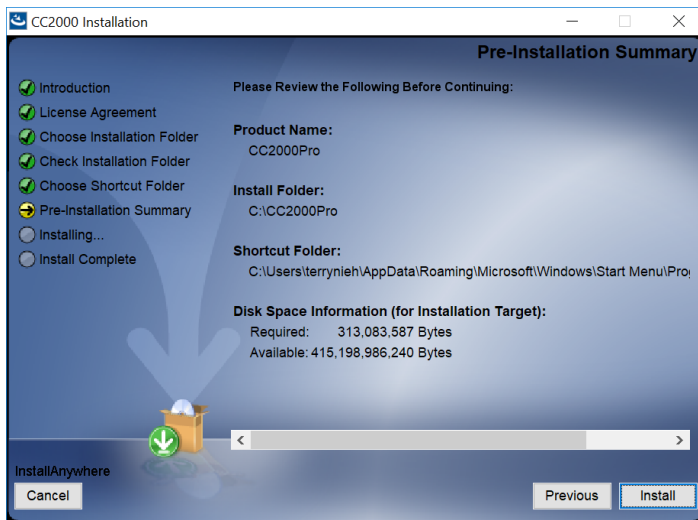
| Heading | Explanation |
|-------------|---|
| Server name | <p>The dialog box presents the default name for the server – as defined in the Windows <i>Computer Name</i> setting. You can choose a different name to identify the server on the CC2000 installation, if you wish. The name can be from 2–32 bytes in any supported language.</p> <p>Note: 1. The following characters may not be used: " ' \</p> <p>2. This name is only for CC2000 server purposes – it doesn't change the actual computer name.</p> |
| CC2000 port | <p>The port that the CC2000 server uses to communicate with other CC2000 servers. The default is 8001.</p> <p>Note: 1. This is the CC2000 Port referred to on the <i>Redundant Servers</i> web page (see <i>Redundant Servers</i>, page 203).</p> <p>2. Although each CC2000 server on the system can use its own port setting, for ease of management we recommend that all CC2000 servers use the same port setting.</p> |
| Device port | <p>The port that the CC2000 server uses to communicate with the devices (ATEN/Altusen IP products) on the installation. The default is 8000.</p> <p>Each CC2000 can have a separate Device port number, but in order to communicate with the devices connected on its network segment, those devices must be configured to use the same port as the one set here.</p> |
| HTTP port | <p>The port that the CC2000 server uses for web communication. The default is 8080. If you use a different port, users must specify the port number in the URL of their browsers.</p> |

| Heading | Explanation |
|-------------|---|
| HTTPS port | The port that the CC2000 server uses for secure web communication. The default is 8443. If you use a different port, users must specify the port number in the URL of their browsers. |
| Viewer Port | The default is 8003. |

8. After the fields have been filled, click *Next* to continue.

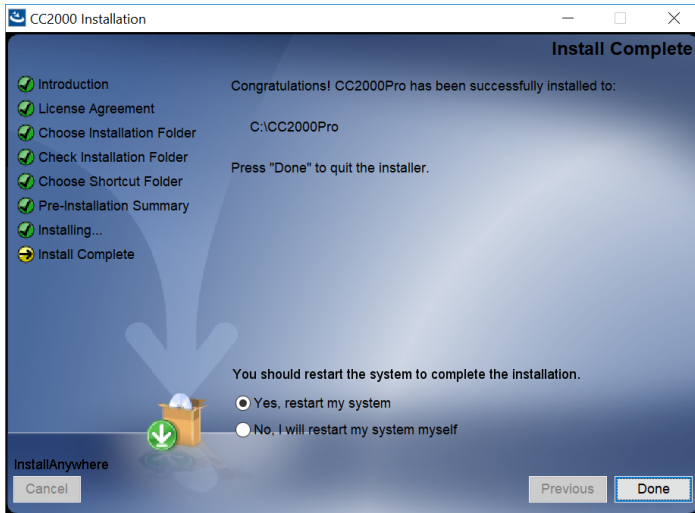
Note: You can still change any of these settings following the installation.
See *System Info*, page 158, for details.

9. The dialog box changes to inform you that files are being copied to the installation folder. Once the files have been copied, click *Continue* to move on.
10. The *Pre-Installation Summary* screen appears:

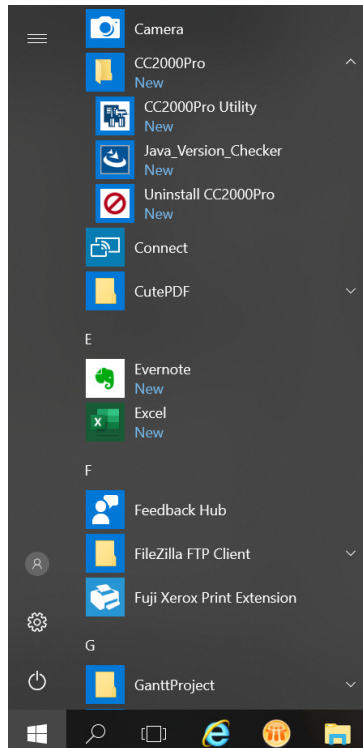


If you wish to change anything, click *Previous* to go back, If the information is correct, click *Install*.

11. When completed, the installer will ask you whether to restart the system to complete the system or not. Click **Done** to exit the installer and restart the system. Choose *No, I will restart my system later* if you do not wish to restart you system.



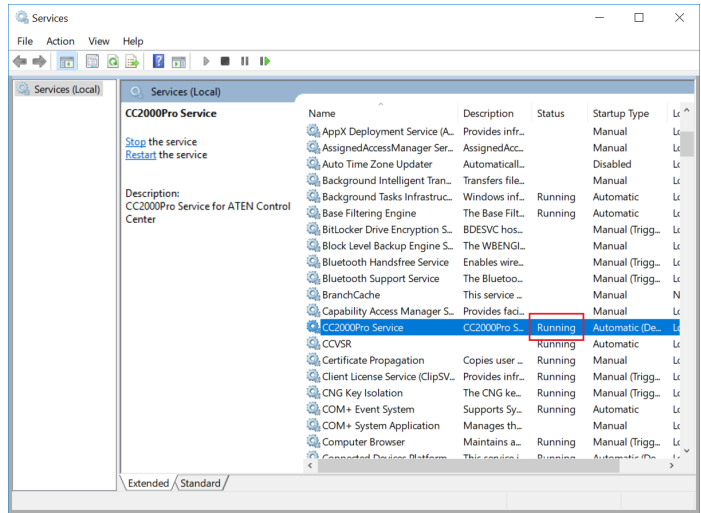
12. A CC2000Pro entry is created in the Windows *Start* menu.



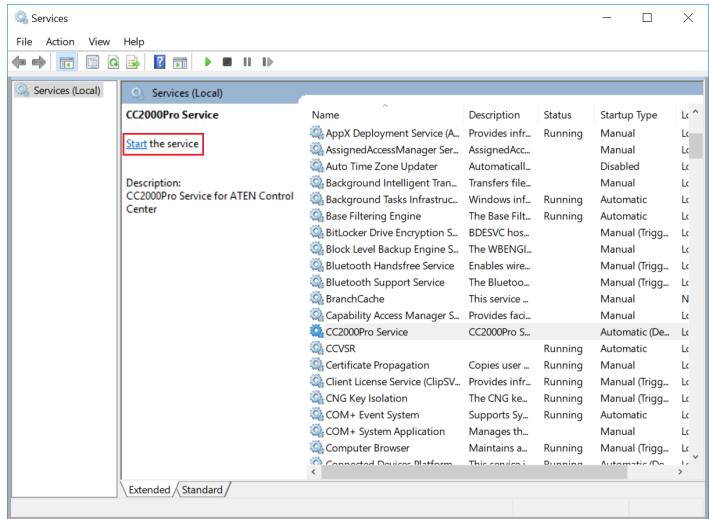
Post-installation Check

After the installation, the CC2000 program starts automatically (and starts automatically with every bootup).

To check that the CC2000 has started, go to the Services desktop app (shown in *Stop CC2000 Service* on page 10) and see if *Running* is shown under the Status column.



If *Running* is not shown, you can click *Start* to start the service.



Linux Version Installation

Before you Begin

The procedure for installing CC2000 on a Linux system is similar to that for Windows, but there are Java considerations to take note of first.

- ♦ If Java isn't already installed on your system, you will need to download it from the Java web site:

```
http://java.com
```

Installation instructions are provided on the Java download page.

- ♦ CC2000 program requires the system to run JRE versions 8 or higher. Some Linux distributions install earlier versions than the JRE 8. To find out the Java version on your system, open a terminal and enter the following:

```
java -version
```

If the version it displays do not fit the system requirement, please make sure you have a JRE version that is Version 8 or higher. (See the previous point regarding downloading and installing Java.)

- ♦ Make sure your PATH and JAVA_HOME environment variables point to the new version in your `/root/.bash_profile` file. For example:

```
JAVA_HOME=/usr/java/jre1.6.0_0-b11
PATH=$JAVA_HOME/bin:$PATH:./
BASH_ENV= $HOME/.bashrc
USERNAME= "root"
export JAVA_HOME PATH BASH_ENV USERNAME
```

- ♦ Even after you install an appropriate Java version and set the new PATH and JAVA_HOME environment variables, the distribution may still not recognize the new version and continue to use its original Java version. If the problem exists on your installation, correct it by doing the following:

1. Copy the `CC2000Setup_Linux.bin` file from the distribution CD to a folder on your hard disk.
2. Open a terminal and go to the directory where the `CC2000Setup_Linux.bin` file is located.
3. Enter the following commands:

```
export LAX_DEBUG=1
sh CC2000-Setup-ForLinux.bin
```

Note: If the installation program starts, cancel it.

4. In the screen output, look for the line (it will be in bold) that starts:

Using VM.....

to see which Java your distribution is defaulting to.

5. If the *Using VM* entry shows a path to a file named *java* in the old Java version directory, go to that directory and either delete the *java* file or rename it.
6. Log out and log back in.

Installing

After making sure that the appropriate version of the JRE has been installed, do the following:

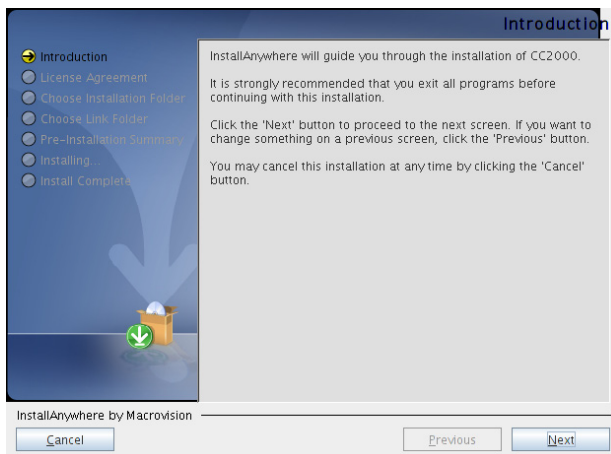
1. Put the software CD that came with your package into the computer's CD or DVD drive.
2. Go to the folder where the installation file (e.g. *CC2000_Setup_V3.0.0_ForLinux.exe*) is located and execute it.

Note: 1. You must run the installation program as the root user.

2. Make sure that the installation file has executable permissions

3. For some versions of Linux, the program must be run in a terminal.
-

A screen, similar to the one below, appears:



Click **Next** to move on.

4. From here, the installation procedure is the same as the one for Windows. Refer to the Windows installation procedure (see page 12), for details on how to proceed.

Post-installation Check

- ♦ After the installation completes successfully, the CC2000 program starts automatically (and starts automatically with every bootup).
To check that the CC2000 has started, start, stop, and restart, the service by issuing the following commands (as root) from a terminal console:
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/cc2000service start#`to start the service
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/cc2000service stop#`to stop the service
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/cc2000service restart#`to restart the service
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/cc2000service status#`to check the service status
- ♦ To check on the Java version your system is running, do the following:
 1. Open the *Start* menu.
 2. Navigate to the CC2000 entry (Programs → CC2000), and select **Java Version Checker**.

Post-Installation Setup

The CC2000 software comes with a default demo license that allows the server to be a primary server with no secondaries and 16 nodes (all of which must be on the same network as the server). For anything beyond this minimum, you will need a license key that allows secondary servers and additional nodes.

Once the software is installed on the server, the next step is to specify whether the server will be a Primary or Secondary.

- ♦ If this server is going to be a Primary, insert the CC2000's USB license key into a USB port; log into the server (see *Logging In*, page 29); go to the *License* page, and click **Upgrade** (see *Updating the License* on page 182, for details). The number of Secondaries and nodes that are allowed depends on your license key purchase.

Note: After upgrading the license remove the key and place it somewhere safe, since you will need it for future upgrades.

- ♦ If this installation is going to be a Secondary server, there is no need to insert a license key – you simply need register it with the primary. See *View Properties* on page 204, for details.

Uninstalling the CC2000

Uninstalling from a Windows System

To uninstall the CC2000 from a Windows system, do the following:

1. Open the *Start* menu.
2. Navigate to the CC2000Pro entry (Programs → CC2000Pro), and select *Uninstall CC2000Pro*.

Note: The removal program does not remove a number of the CC2000 files and folders that were created during operation. For a complete removal (necessary if you plan on reinstalling), you must remove them yourself from the location that the CC2000 was installed at (the default folder is C:\CC2000Pro).

Uninstalling from a Linux System

To uninstall the CC2000 from a Linux system, as root, execute the following command:

```
/install-path/Uninstall_CC2000Pro/Uninstall_CC2000Pro
```

Where */install-path/* represents the path and directory that you specified for the CC2000's location when you installed the program.

Note: The removal program does not remove a number of the CC2000 files and folders that were created during installation. For a complete removal (necessary if you plan on reinstalling), you must remove them yourself. The default is */home/CC2000Pro*.

Upgrading the CC2000

If the CC2000 program has already been installed, it is not necessary to perform a full install. You can upgrade to the latest CC2000 version by running the CC2000-Upgrade program:

- ♦ CC2000Upgrade_Win.exe (for Windows)
- ♦ CC2000Upgrade_Linux.bin (for Linux)

Note: When you upgrade, you must upgrade the primary and each of the secondaries.

New versions of the Upgrade Program are put up on our website for download as they become available. Check the website to get the most up-to-date version.

Preliminary Steps

These steps make sure that the installation database is at the most current level across all of the CC2000 servers. Should a problem occur after the upgrade, you can use the backup to restore the database to its latest working level.

We recommend you take the following backup steps on each CC2000 server before you begin.

1. Replicate the database of each of the secondaries; use *Run Now* for the schedule setting (See *Replicate Database* on page 201).
2. After replication completes; go back and set the schedule to a time that will not take place during the upgrade time (next week, next month, etc.).
3. On the primary unit, do a Database Backup.

Once you have finished these preliminary steps you can upgrade the primary and each of the secondaries. When you run the upgrade program, simply follow the installation Wizard to complete the procedure.

CC2000 Secondary Servers

A complete CC2000 installation can comprise 1 Primary and up to 31 Secondaries servers located anywhere throughout the world. The Primary server becomes automatically designated when you upgrade the demo license that came with your CC2000 software. See *License*, page 182, for details.

Once the Primary server has been set, you can then register each of the other CC2000 servers as Secondaries with the *Register* function. See *View Properties*, page 204, for details.

CC2000 Redundant Secondary Servers

To provide CC2000 server redundancy, at least a secondary CC2000 server must be installed.

Should the primary server fail (due to network failure, CC2000 failure, etc.), one of the secondary servers will act as the deputy primary server. Users can operate normally and the connected devices can still connect to the server. However, administrators will not be able to configure any of the settings until a primary server is present (fixed or newly assigned).

Refer to *Redundant Servers* on page 203 on how you can appoint one of the secondary servers as the primary server.

Database Migration Utility

The Database Migration Utility is a utility to help you migrate the database of CC2000 v2.8 to CC2000 v3.1 or later versions.

The utility is a pure Java utility and can be used on Windows and Linux systems.

The utility will export the database of current CC2000 v2.8 as a backup file that is compatible with CC2000 v3.1 or later versions.

Before you begin

Make sure the CC2000 server you are trying *migrate from* is version 2.8.271 (or later). If not, download the upgrade file from the “CC2000” product page of the ATEN website and install it.

Make sure the CC2000 server you are trying to *migrate to* is version 3.1.301 (or later). If not, download the upgrade file from the “CC2000 3.0” product page of the ATEN website and install it.

Migrating the Database

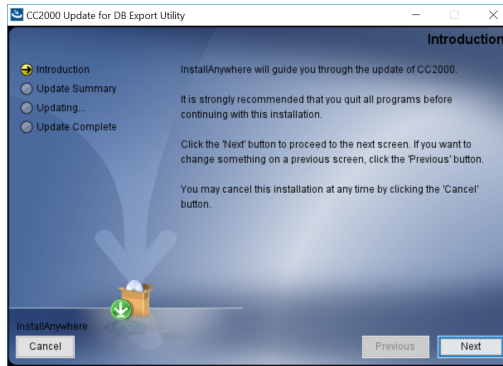
Follow the procedures below to migrate the database:

1. On the computer running the CC2000 v2.8, download the DB Migration Utility installer from the “CC2000 3.0” product page of the ATEN website.



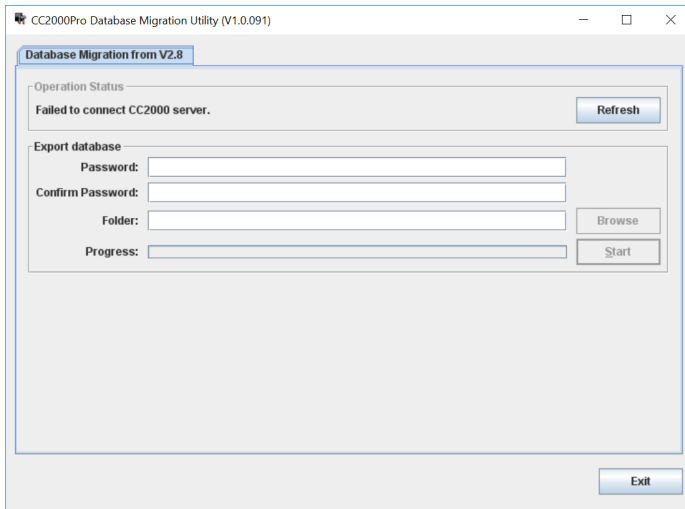
CC2000_V28_DB
MigrationUtility-F
orWindows

2. Run the installer and follow the on-screen instructions.



3. Launch the DB Migration Utility.

Note: Make sure CC2000 v2.8 is running to have the **Operation Status** appear as connected, click **Refresh** to refresh the status.

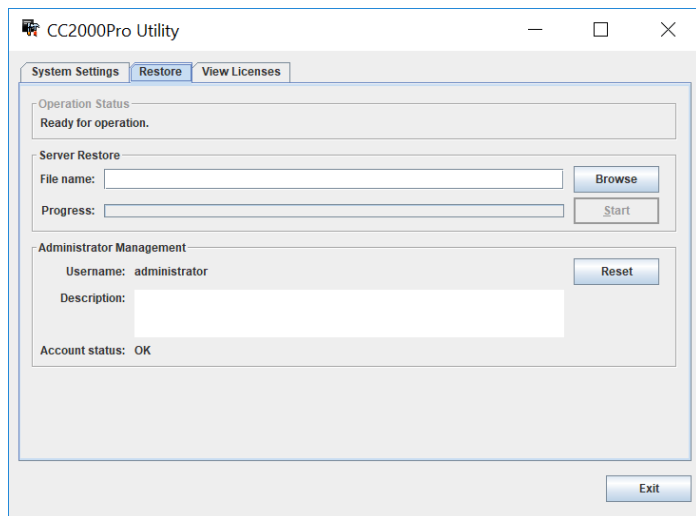


4. Enter the password, repeat the password and click **Browse** to select a destination folder.
5. Click **Start** to begin the export process. A database backup file (*.cbk) and a log file (*.log) will appear in the destination folder once the process is complete.

6. After the export process, stop the CC2000 v2.8 server (see *Stop CC2000 Service* on page 10).
7. Copy the *.cbk file to the computer running your CC2000 v3.1 and make sure the server is running.

Note: The CC2000 v3.1 server must be a primary server.

8. Launch the CC2000Pro utility and go to the **Restore** tab.



9. Click **Browse** and select the *.cbk file.
10. The utility will prompt you to enter the password. Enter the password and click **Start** to begin the import (restore) process.
11. After the import process:
 - ♦ Log into the CC2000 v3.1 server to check:
 - ♦ the export log file to see the affected items (authentication server, user type, user account, notifications, etc.)
 - ♦ the device connection settings (CC management settings, server IP, device port, etc.).
 - ♦ Find the secondary CC2000 servers originally on the CC2000 v2.8 server and re-register them to the primary CC2000 v3.1 server.

Notes About the Migration

- ♦ Authentication Servers: DUAL and MOTP authentication servers are not supported in CC2000 v3.1 and will be converted to RADIUS and respectively renamed as “DUAL_XXXXX” and “MOTP_XXXXX”. Review and reconfigure the users originally using these authentication methods.
- ♦ User Types: Some user types are remapped and user-created user types will be renamed without any roles. Review and reconfigure where necessary.
- ♦ Folder: Folder is not supported in CC2000 v3.1. All folders will be removed and the devices under these folders will be moved to device root.
- ♦ Events: Some events have changed in CC2000 v3.1. If removed, these events will also be deleted. The corresponding logs will be kept and available for display.
- ♦ Notifications: The removed events and their notifications will also be removed.
- ♦ Detached Devices: This function is not supported in CC2000 v3.1 and will be removed.
- ♦ Maintenance setting: Due to setting range changes, some maintenance settings (log options, device log options, serial console history options and SNMP trap options) may be changed, refer to the corresponding section for the updated ranges.

Chapter 3

Browser Operation

To ensure multi-platform operability, access to the CC2000 is available through most standard web browsers. Once users log in and are authenticated, the CC2000's browser GUI comes up. This chapter explains the login procedure, and describes the CC2000's browser GUI components.

Logging In

Follow the steps below to log into CC2000.

1. Open a browser and specify the IP address of the CC2000 in the browser's URL location bar.

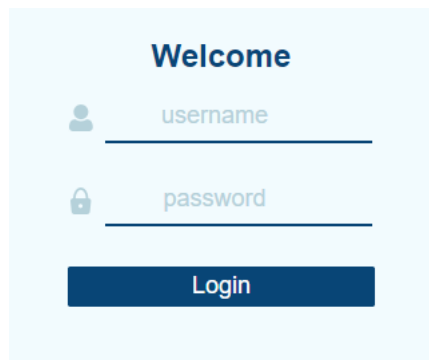
If you created a shortcut on the desktop, opening the shortcut will bring you to the URL on your default browser.

Note: If the system administrator has configured the HTTP or HTTPS port setting as something other than the known ports 80 and 443, you must include **http://** or **https://** before the IP address, and specify the port number along with the IP address. For example:

`https://192.168.1.20:8443`

Where *8443* is the https port number, and a colon is inserted between it and the IP address.

2. If any Security Alert dialog boxes appear, accept the certificate – it can be trusted. See *Trusted Certificates*, page 247 for details. After a moment, the Login page appears:



3. Provide your CC2000 Username and Password, then click *Login*.

Note: The pre-installed system administrator account’s username is “administrator” and the password is “password”.

4. The system will immediately prompt you to change the login password as shown:

CC2000 - Change Password

New password

Very weak

Confirm password

Save

Enter the new password, confirm the password again in the next field and click *Save*. A maximum of 32 English alphanumeric characters is allowed.

5. The system will bring you to the Dashboard.

ATEN CC2000

Search Functions

Dashboard

Device management

User Accounts

System

Logs

My Favorites

Recent

Device Status

00_PE7328J_Andrew_1 (PE7328J)

The device is offline, please check.

| Name | Model | IP |
|---------------------|----------------|--------------|
| 00_PE7328J_Andrew_1 | PE7328J | |
| 11 | Generic device | 10.3.166.11 |
| 12 | Generic device | 10.3.167.235 |
| 111 | Generic | |
| 123 | Generic device | |
| aaaaa | Generic | |

Events

| Name | Model | Logs |
|--------------|----------|------|
| SN0148C04Q | SN0148CO | 1 |
| KN0164VV_abc | KN0164V | 4438 |

4439

Critical

Tasks

0

Failed

0

Succeeded

No tasks executed within 3 months

Users

| Username | IP | Time |
|-----------------------|-------------|----------|
| administrator @ 3700T | 10.3.41.138 | 01:16:55 |

1

License

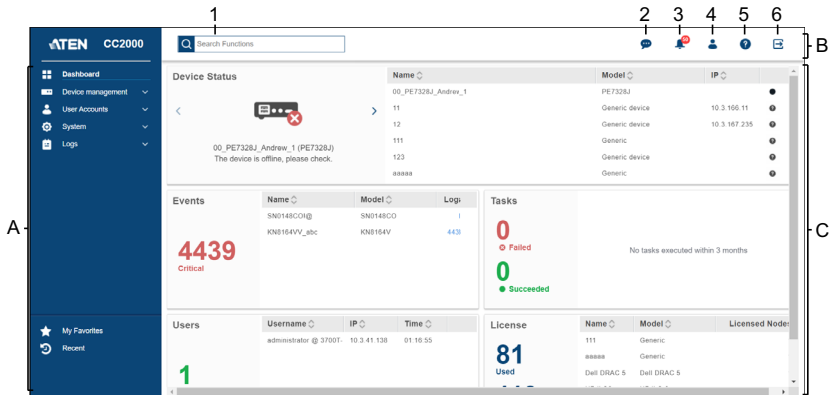
| Name | Model | Licensed Node |
|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 111 | Generic | |
| aaaaa | Generic | |
| Dell DRAC 5 | Dell DRAC 5 | |

81

Used

The Interface

The general interface of CC2000 and its components (sections and items) are shown below:



Screen Components

The screen components are described in the table below:

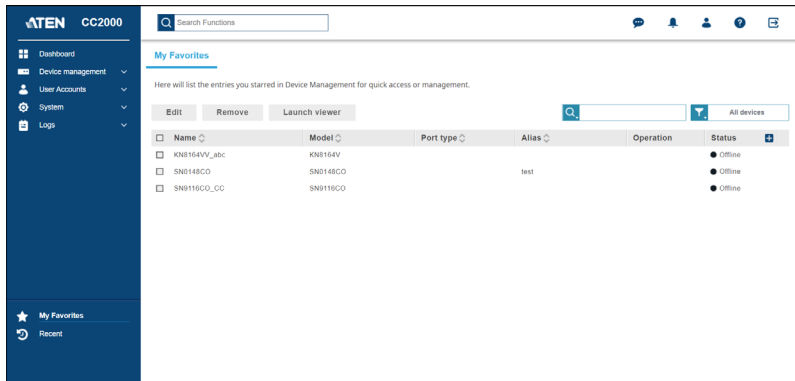
| No. | Item | Description |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--|
| A | Sidebar Menu Section | The sidebar menu section is the main selection menu. Click to select the menu you wish to view/configure. Clicking the menu may expand into submenus for further configurations. |
| B | Task Bar Section | The task bar section contains function search, notifications, personal settings (language & password), help and logout. |
| C | Interactive Display Panel Section | This section is your main work area. The screens that appear reflect your menu choices and submenu item selection. The use of this panel is discussed later in this chapter. |
| 1 | Function Search | <p>You can use this item to search for functions in CC2000. For example, if you wish to find “SNMP”, enter it into the search bar. All the SNMP related functions will be displayed (shown below). Click the desired search result and CC2000 will bring you to the function’s configuration.</p> <div> <p>The search bar contains the text 'snmp'. Below it, a list of search results is displayed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> System > Notification > SNMP Traps System > SNMP > SNMP Agent System > SNMP > SNMP Manager Logs > SNMP Traps > SNMP Traps </div> |

| No. | Item | Description |
|-----|--------------|--|
| 2 | Online Chat | Clicking this icon will bring up a chat window. Refer to <i>Chat</i> on page 40 for more information. |
| 3 | Notification | If there are notifications, the bell icon will have a number displayed on it. The information displayed here will depend on the user's permission. Clicking this icon will display the 50 newest notifications. These include, from newest to the oldest, critical logs, warning logs and system messages. Click <i>Clean all</i> to clear all notifications. Click <i>View logs</i> to go to System Logs (see <i>System Logs</i> , page 212). Click <i>View message box</i> to open message box window. Refer to see <i>Message Box</i> , page 36 on how to use message box. |
| 4 | Personal | Clicking this icon will display the username of this session, the time the user last logged in, user preference option and the change password option. Click <i>Preferences</i> to change the language of the interface and whether you wish to <i>Resume CC2000 to my previous logout status when logging in</i> . Click <i>Change password</i> to change the password for this user. |
| 5 | About | Clicking this icon for CC2000 information. Click <i>Help</i> for the CC2000 user manual. Click <i>About</i> for information of your CC2000. |
| 6 | Logout | Click this icon to log out of your CC2000 session. |

My Favorites

The *My Favorites* page is similar to bookmarks. Devices and ports that you frequently access can be marked as favorites and you can come to this page to quickly access them. Simply open this page and select the device/port instead of hunting for devices and ports in the *Devices* submenu. This feature is especially handy on large, crowded installations.

Clicking **My Favorites** will bring you to the page shown below:



Note: Editing and operations are the same as those in the Devices submenu. Refer to *Devices* on page 53 for more information.

Add Favorites

Follow the steps below to add a favorite.

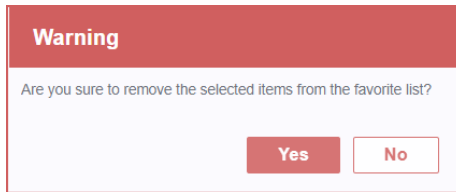
1. Go to the Devices submenu (**Device management** > **Devices**).

| Revisions (Available nodes: Unlimited) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------------------|------------|------------|----------|----------------|------------|---------|-------------|--|
| Add + | | Edit | Delete | More .. | | | | | |
| Name | Model | IP | Department | Location | Server | Operation | Status | All devices | |
| 00-DeviceDev | Generic device 10.0.1.100 | | | | | WMS | Offline | N/A | |
| 00-AgnetDev1 | IBM IBM 10.0.0.100 | Dept1 | Loc1 | | WIN2013-ABCDCE | Get status | Offline | Unknown | |
| 00-IBM-PK7248B-01507AF1003 | PK7248B | | | | | | Offline | | |
| | PK7248B | | | | | | Offline | | |
| | PK7248B | | | | | | Offline | | |
| | PK7248B | | | | | | Offline | | |
| | PK7248B | | | | | | Offline | | |
| 00-IBM-9N017S-01010AF1006 | 9N017S | | | | | | Offline | | |
| 007-IBM-KN0145b-01010AF1007 | KN0145 | | | | | | Offline | | |
| 000-IBM-KN0145b-01010AF1008 | KN0145b | | | | | | Offline | | |
| 000-IBM-KN0145b-01010AF1009 | KN0145b | | | | | | Offline | | |
| 000H7248-01010AF10006 | AP05A1 | 10.0.0.115 | | | WIN2013-LANCOP | Get status | Offline | Unknown | |

2. Find the device/port you wish to add to My Favorites in the device/port list.
3. A star icon ☆ should be visible on the left of the device/port name, click it.
4. The star icon will change to an orange star ★ to indicate you have successfully added the device/port to My Favorites.

Remove Favorites

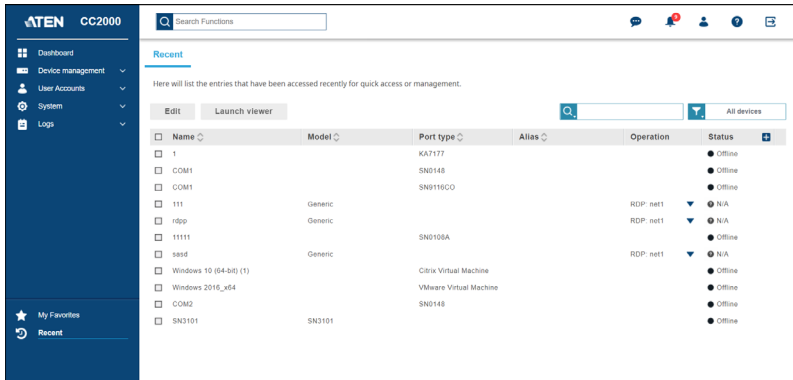
To remove a device/port from My Favorites, check the checkbox of the device/port and click **Remove**. The system will ask if you would like to remove the device/port, click **Yes** to continue.



Recent

The *Recent* page is similar to history. Devices and ports that you have previously accessed are listed here (up to 100 recent devices/ports) and you can come to this page to quickly access them. Simply open this page and select the device/port instead of hunting for devices and ports in the *Devices* submenu. This feature is especially handy on large, crowded installations.

Clicking **Recent** will bring you to the page shown below:



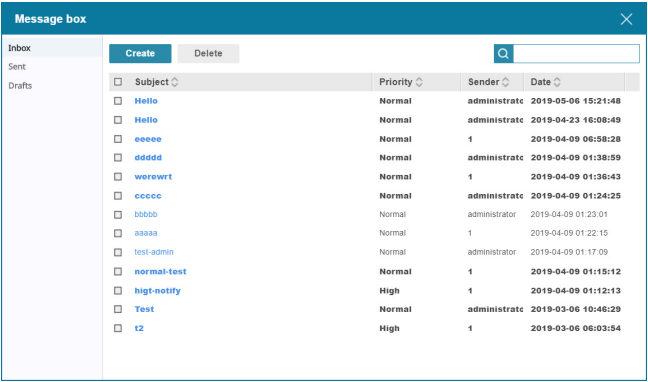
The screenshot shows the ATEN CC2000 web interface. The left sidebar contains navigation links: Dashboard, Device management, User Accounts, System, and Logs. The main content area is titled 'Recent' and includes a search bar and a table of recently accessed entries. The table has columns for Name, Model, Port type, Alias, Operation, and Status. The entries listed are:

| Name | Model | Port type | Alias | Operation | Status |
|-------------------------|---------|------------------------|-------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 | | KAT177 | | | ● Offline |
| COM1 | | SN0148 | | | ● Offline |
| COM1 | | SN01600 | | | ● Offline |
| 111 | Generic | | | RDP: net1 | ● N/A |
| r8pp | Generic | | | RDP: net1 | ● N/A |
| 11111 | | SN0108A | | | ● Offline |
| sssd | Generic | | | RDP: net1 | ● N/A |
| Windows 10 (64-bit) (1) | | Citrix Virtual Machine | | | ● Offline |
| Windows 2016_x64 | | VMware Virtual Machine | | | ● Offline |
| COM2 | | SN0148 | | | ● Offline |
| SN3101 | SN3101 | | | | ● Offline |

Note: Editing and operations are the same as those in the Devices submenu. Refer to *Devices* on page 53 for more information.

Message Box

Go to the Message Box by clicking the notification icon followed by **View message box**.



Note: The Sent and Draft options are Administrator-only function.

You can select **Inbox**, **Sent** or **Drafts** folders to respectively find incoming messages, messages you have sent, or unsent messages.

Use the search option on the top right-hand corner to filter the messages.

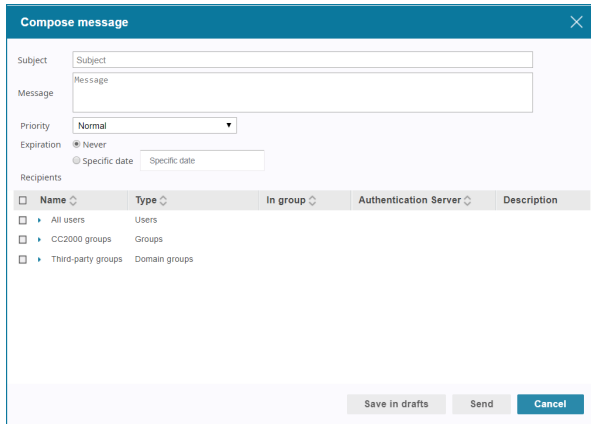
Click the column headings to sort the order of display.

Inbox

■ Create Notification

Follow the steps below to create a notification:

1. Click **Create** for the following pop-up window:



Compose message [X]

Subject:

Message:

Priority: **Normal** [v]

Expiration: ☒ Never ☐ Specific date:

Recipients:

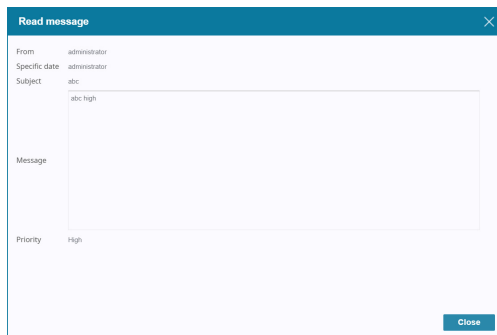
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Name [v] | Type [v] | In group [v] | Authentication Server [v] | Description |
|--------------------------|--------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------------------|-------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | All users | Users | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | CC2000 groups | Groups | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Third-party groups | Domain groups | | | |

Save in drafts Send Cancel

2. Fill in the **Subject** and **Message** fields.
3. Select a priority type using the **Priority** drop-down menu.
4. Select the **Expiration** option: Never or Specific date. Set the date for the system message to expire if Specific date is selected.
5. Select the **Recipients** by checking the checkbox(es). You can expand recipients in the Name column by clicking the arrowhead to select individual users.
6. Click **Save in drafts** or **Send**.

Messages are respectively copied into the Drafts or Sent items folder in the sidebar.

Note: 1. High priority messages appear on the first page when a user logs in as shown below:



Read message [X]

From: administrator

Specific date: administrator

Subject: abc
abc: high

Message:

Priority: High

Close

2. Normal priority messages will appear with a notification in the Notification icon as shown below:



■ Delete Notification

To delete a notification(s), check the checkbox(es) of the notification(s) and click **Delete**. A confirmation message will be shown, click **Yes** to confirm.

Sent

Clicking this folder allows you to edit and delete sent notifications.

■ Edit Sent Notification

Follow the steps below to edit a notification:

1. Check the checkbox of the notification and click **Edit**.

A screenshot of the 'Edit message' dialog box. The dialog has a title bar 'Edit message' with a close button. It contains several fields: 'Subject' with the value 'abc', 'Message' with the value 'abc high', 'Priority' set to 'High', and 'Expiration' set to 'Never'. Below these is a 'Recipients' section with a table. The table has columns: 'Name', 'Type', 'In group', 'Authentication Server', and 'Description'. The table lists several users, including 'All users', '12345678901234!', 'administrator', 'test123', 'testadmin', 'writetest', 'wwwwww', and 'CC2000 groups'. The 'administrator' row is selected with a checkbox. At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: 'Save as new draft', 'Send as new notification', and 'Close'.

2. Make your desired changes and click **Save as new draft** or **Send as new notification**.

■ Delete Sent Notification

To delete a sent notification(s), check the checkbox(es) and click **Delete**. A confirmation message will be shown, click **Yes** to confirm.

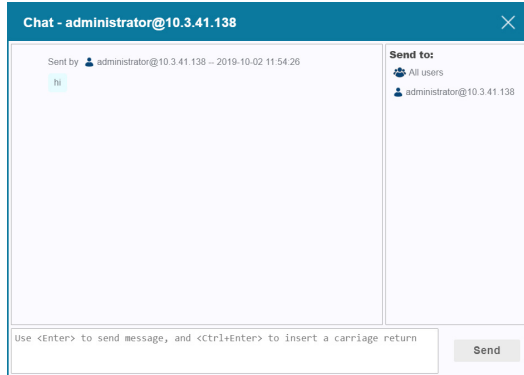
Drafts

Clicking this folder allows you to edit and delete unsent notifications.

Note: The Edit and Delete options works similar to the ones described in the Sent folder. Refer back to page 38 where necessary.

Chat

Click the chat icon  to bring up the Chat panel. An example is shown below:



Send to lists the users currently online. Click to select the user you wish to send the chat to. You can select multiple users, or click “All users” to send to all. The selected user(s) will be highlighted.

Click the X icon (top right) of the panel to exit the Chat function.

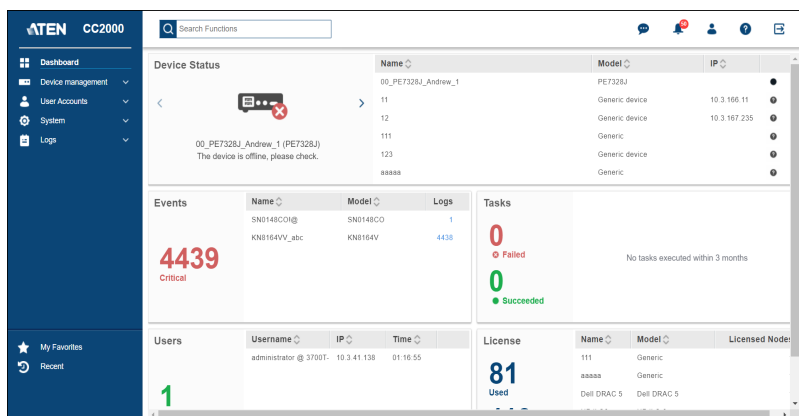
Chapter 4

Dashboard and Basic Operation

Overview

Dashboard provides a summarized status of the system separated into the following information panels:

Device Status, Events, Users, Tasks and License.



Note: Dashboard page access is only for Super Administrators and System Administrators.

Device Status

Upon logging into the system for the first time, the Device Status panel will remind you to add devices at the *Device Management* sidebar menu.

With devices added to the system, this panel will display the status of all the devices in a table. The left of the panel displays detailed status of a device while the aforementioned table is on the right. An example is shown below:

Device Status

<

00_GenericDev (Generic device)
10.0.1.100
The status is not available.

>

| Name | Model | IP | |
|------------------------------|----------------|--------------|--|
| 00_GenericDev | Generic device | 10.0.1.100 | |
| 00C087520926 | APB941 | 10.0.90.215 | |
| 00_PES316X_111 | PE3316X | | |
| KN8164V_abc | KN8164V | 10.3.166.252 | |
| 00_PES324A_102 | PE3324A | 10.3.167.46 | |
| 000_AggregateDev-1 | IBM IMM | 10.0.90.180 | |
| 002-Sim-PE7216G-011074FF0102 | PE7216G | 10.0.90.180 | |

If a device is offline or a critical event happened*, the device will be shown on the left with its status shown below. For more than one device, click the left or right arrow to cycle through the devices.

Note: If the environment information is turned on for KN and SN devices, abnormal temperature or fan operation will also be displayed here.

Click the column headings of the table to sort the order of display.

The last entry of the table is a visual status display of the device.

-  represents online.
-  represents offline.
-  represents abnormal.
-  represents unknown.

42

Events

The system will collect all the critical device logs of the past 3 months and display them in this panel.

| <div>Events</div> <div>2034</div> <div>Critical</div> | Name ▾ | Model ▾ | Logs |
|---|------------|---------|------|
| | IP-KVMSW A | KN8164 | 7 |
| | kn8164_123 | kn8164 | 2027 |

The number on the left is the total number of critical logs collected.

Click the number in the last entry column for the logs of a particular device. A window will pop-up displaying the detailed logs. An example is shown below:

| Log Details (IP-KVMSW A) | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|
| No. | Description ▾ | Date ▾ |
| 1 | SYS: Abnormal speed: fan3=0 I | 2019-03-08 09:47:06 |
| 2 | SYS: Abnormal speed: fan2=0 I | 2019-03-08 09:47:06 |
| 3 | SYS: Abnormal speed: fan1=0 I | 2019-03-08 09:47:06 |
| 4 | SYS: Too high temperature: spd4=52 I | 2019-03-08 09:47:06 |
| 5 | SYS: Too high temperature: spd3=49 I | 2019-03-08 09:47:06 |
| 6 | SYS: Too high temperature: spd2=34 I | 2019-03-08 09:47:06 |
| 7 | SYS: Too high temperature: spd1=40 I | 2019-03-08 09:47:06 |

Tasks

This panel displays the scheduled tasks of the past 3 months and the status of the tasks.

| Tasks | Name ↕ | Time ↕ | |
|---|----------------------------|---------------------|---|
| <div>8</div> <div>Failed</div> <div>50</div> <div>Succeeded</div> | scriptalert 1 | 2019-05-13 02:27:32 | ● |
| | <script>alert(12)</script> | 2019-05-13 00:39:38 | ● |
| | scriptalert 1 | 2019-05-12 02:27:28 | ● |
| | <script>alert(12)</script> | 2019-05-12 00:39:28 | ● |
| | scriptalert 1 | 2019-05-11 02:27:22 | ● |
| | <script>alert(12)</script> | 2019-05-11 00:39:23 | ● |
| | scriptalert 1 | 2019-05-10 02:27:26 | ● |

The red number on the left is the number of failed scheduled tasks.

The green number on the left is the number of successful scheduled tasks.


Users

This panel displays which user(s) is currently online. An example is shown:

| Users 2 Online | Username | IP | Time | |
|--|----------------------------------|-------------|----------|---|
| | administrator @ WIN2012--ABCDEFG | 10.3.41.138 | 06:33:49 | |
| | writetest @ WIN2012--ABCDEFG | 10.3.41.138 | 00:00:45 |  |

The number on the left shows how many users are currently online.

The table gives you the details of the users currently online.

The last entry column includes a “kill this session” icon . Click it to log this user out.

License

This panel displays the number of used and available nodes. An example is shown:

| <div>License</div> <div>971</div> <div>Used</div> <div>∞</div> <div>Available</div> | Name | Model | Licensed Nodes |
|---|-------------------------------|----------|----------------|
| | 00C0B7520626 | AP8941 | 24 |
| | 00_PE5316X_111 | PE5316X | 14 |
| | 00_PE5324G | PE5324G | 24 |
| | 00_PE8324A_W2 | PE8324A | 24 |
| | 000_AggregateDev-1 | IBM IMM | 1 |
| | 002-Sim-PE7216rG-011074FF0102 | PE7216rG | 16 |
| | 003-Sim-PE7324rB-011074FF0103 | PE7324rB | 24 |

Basic Operations

A number of basic operations can be seen throughout the CC2000 interface and are explained in the following sections.

Filter

Filter allows you to refine the number and the type of items being displayed. Filter for a particular table is located at the top right-hand corner above the table:

Devices (Available nodes:Unlimited)

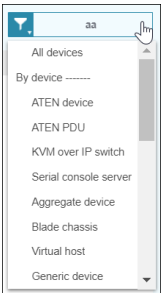
Add Edit Delete More

aa

All devices

| Name | Model | IP | Department | Location | Server | Operation | Status |
|------------------------------|----------------|-------------|------------|----------|---------------|------------|-----------|
| 00-GenericsDev | Generic device | 10.0.1.100 | | | | Web | ● N/A |
| 000_AggregateDev-1 | IBM MM | 10.0.90.180 | Degr1 | Loc1 | WIN2012-ABCDE | Get status | ● Unknown |
| 002-Sim-PE7216G-011074FF0102 | PE7216G | | | | | | ● Offline |
| 1-PE7216G | PE7216G | | | | | | ● Offline |
| 003-Sim-PE7324B-011074FF0103 | PE7324B | | | | | | ● Offline |
| 1-PE7324B | PE7324B | | | | | | ● Offline |
| 006-Sim-SN0116-011074FF0106 | SN0116 | | | | | | ● Offline |
| 007-Sim-SN0116-011074FF0107 | SN0116 | | | | | | ● Offline |
| 008-Sim-KN4140v-011074FF0108 | KN4140v | | | | | | ● Offline |
| 009-Sim-KN4140v-011074FF0109 | KN4140v | | | | | | ● Offline |
| 000COR7507606 | AD8841 | 10.0.90.215 | | | WIN2012-ABCDE | Get status | ● Unknown |

Click the filter bar for a drop-down menu that includes different filter options. An example is shown:



Click to select any of the filter to control which items are being displayed. The table will be updated to reflect your filter selection.

Search

Search allows you to search for items using keywords relating to the search options. Search for a particular table is also located at the top right-hand corner above the table:

Devices (Available nodes: Unlimited)

Add Edit Delete More

Search

Filter

All devices

| Name | Model | IP | Department | Location | Server | Operation | Status |
|------------------------------|----------------|-------------|------------|----------|---------------|------------|---------|
| 00-GenericsDev | Generic device | 10.0.1.100 | | | | Web | N/A |
| 000_AggregateDev-1 | IBM iRM | 10.0.90.180 | Dept1 | Loc1 | WIN2012-ABCDE | Get status | Unknown |
| 002-9m-PE7216vG-011074FF0102 | PE7216vG | | | | | | Offline |
| 1-PE7216vG | PE7216vG | | | | | | Offline |
| 003-9m-PE7324vB-011074FF0103 | PE7324vB | | | | | | Offline |
| 1-PE7324vB | PE7324vB | | | | | | Offline |
| 005-9m-SN0116-011074FF0105 | SN0116 | | | | | | Offline |
| 007-9m-SN0116-011074FF0107 | SN0116 | | | | | | Offline |
| 008-9m-KN4140v-011074FF0108 | KN4140v | | | | | | Offline |
| 009-9m-KN4140v-011074FF0109 | KN4140v | | | | | | Offline |
| 00C2R7070626 | APR641 | 10.0.90.215 | | | WIN2012-ABCDE | Get status | Unknown |

In the blank field, enter the keyword you wish to search for and press *Enter*. The table will be updated to reflect your search result. An example is shown:


Add Edit Delete More

Search test

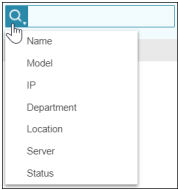
Filter

All devices

| Name | Model | IP | Department | Location |
|---------------------|----------|----|------------|----------|
| SN00916-test-QAbbaa | SN9116CO | | | |
| sn1148-test-145 | SN9116 | | | |

You can click the  icon to cancel your search, the table will also be updated accordingly.

To refine your search, you can click the magnifying glass for a list of search options:



Click the search options (multiple selections available) to check the category(s) you wish to search for. For the example shown here, you can check *Model*, *Location*, and enter something in the blank field to search for something in the *Model* and *Location* categories.

Table Headings

Click the table column headings to sort the display priority.

Note: The headings at the top of the table don't all appear for each view. Click the + icon to select the headings you wish to view.

| Name | Model | IP | Department | Location | Server | Operation | Status |
|---------------------|---------|--------------|------------|----------|-------------|------------|----------|
| 00_PE732BJ_Andrew_1 | PE732BJ | 10.3.166.177 | | | 3700T-15243 | Get status | Power On |

Edit / Further Options

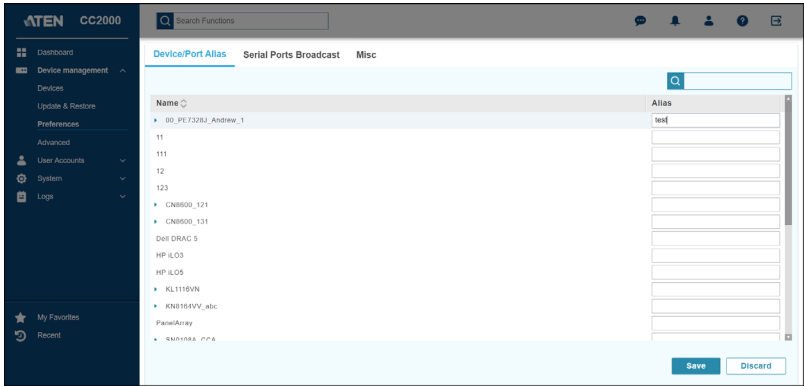
As an alternative to the *Edit* or *More* options, you may move your cursor over an item and a pencil icon and/or option icon will appear. An example is shown below:

| Name | Model | IP | Department | Location | Server | Operation | Status |
|----------|----------|--------------|------------|----------|-------------|------------|--------|
| SN0148CO | SN0148CO | 10.3.167.203 | | | 3700T-15243 | Web access | Online |

Click one of the icons for a drop-down menu and click to select what you wish to configure. For information on these options, refer to *Editing Devices* on page 88 or *More* on page 96.

Modifications on Interactive Display Panel

When editing a page on the interactive display panel, some background areas will turn gray (as shown in the example diagram below), this is to remind that any modification has not been saved.



This Page Intentionally Left Blank

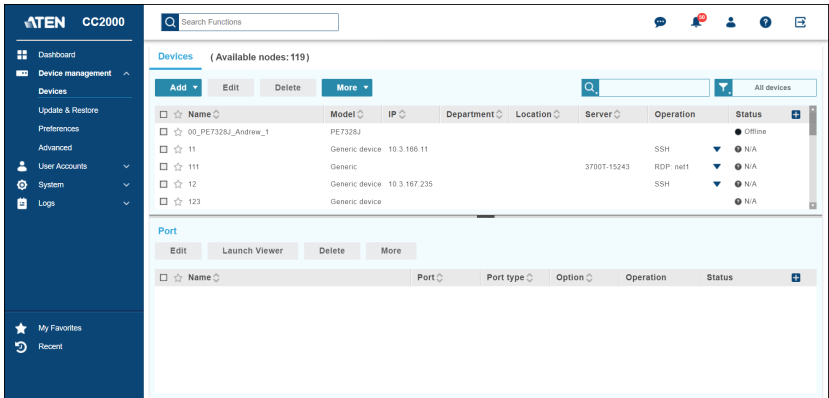
Chapter 5

Device Management

Overview

The *Device Management* menu is used to add, configure, and organize the devices that will be managed over the CC2000 network.

Clicking *Device management* will bring you to the *Devices* submenu and its main panel as shown:



Note: The Device Management page access is for Super Administrators, System Administrators, Device Administrators and Auditors. Auditors can only view the items in this menu. Users with device access right can also access parts of this page.

Preliminary Procedures

Before devices can be managed, they must first be added into the system. This involves four basic steps:

1. Connecting the devices to the same network segment as the CC2000. You must do this for the Primary and each of the Secondaries.
2. Once the devices have been connected to the same network segment as the CC2000, the CC2000 managing that segment must be made aware of them. This can be done either by enabling the *CC Management* function on the device's ANMS page (see *Device ANMS Settings* on page 240), or with the *Initialize devices IP/Port* function in System Broadcast (see *System Broadcast* on page 129). Each of the Secondaries, then notifies the Primary of the devices connected to it.

Note: 1. On the *Devices* page of the Primary, clicking the **Add > Auto Discovery** lists all the available devices including all of the ones connected to its Secondaries.

2. Devices that already have been added to the CC2000 management system do not show in the list of available devices.
-

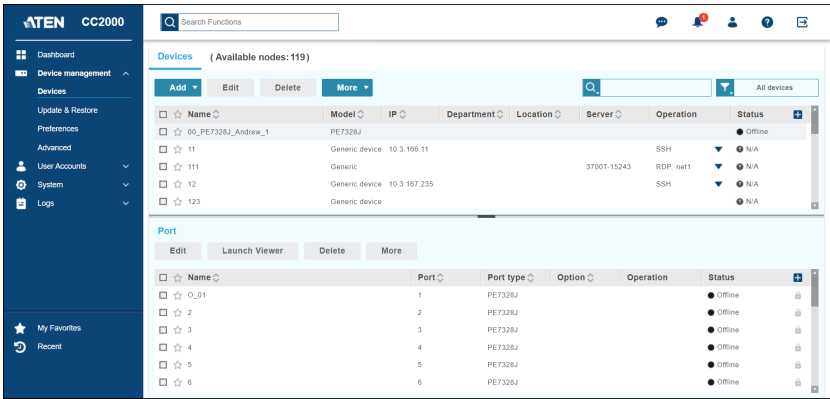
3. From the Primary CC2000 unit, the devices recognized in step 2 must be added to the CC2000's management system (see page 58).
4. Finally, devices can be created either as actual physical port devices (by unlocking each port), or by combining various ports into logical device constructs (Aggregate Devices, Group Devices, etc.). See *Adding an Aggregate Device*, page 76, for details.

Using VPN

In some installations you may prefer to use a VPN (virtual private network) environment for your CC2000 management functions. In this configuration, it is not necessary for the device to be recognized by the CC2000 that manages its network segment. It can be recognized directly by the Primary unit. This is accomplished by enabling the CC Management function (on the device's ANMS page – see page 240) and keying in the IP address of the CC2000 Primary you want the device to be recognized by. See *VPNs*, page 241, for more details.

Devices

The Interactive Display Panel for *Devices* is divided into an upper and a lower screen.



All devices that have been configured for use on the CC2000 server and have been added into its database are listed in the upper screen.

The lower screen is used to access and control the ports and outlets of the devices from the upper screen. Click to highlight a device in the upper screen to display its ports/outlets in the lower screen.

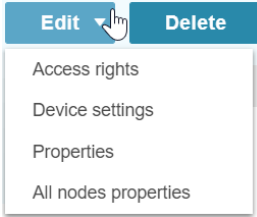
On the top left-hand corner are the general functions of this page.



Device types that can be added and configured are found under the *Add* drop-down menu at the top of the main panel.

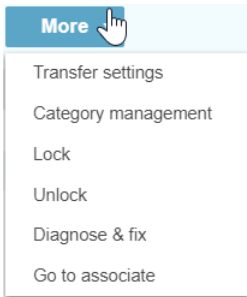


If you wish to edit a device, check the device and click *Edit* for a drop-down menu:



If you wish to delete a device(s), check the device and click *Delete*.

More configuration options are available here. Click *More* for a drop-down menu as shown:



The device types and an explanation of their purposes are given in the following table:

| Type | Purpose |
|-----------|--|
| ATEN KVM | <p>Select this type to add ATEN/Altusen KVM devices into the CC2000 management system. CC2000 supports CN, CS, KH, KL, KN, PN, SN and PE series devices. The “PE series” here only refers to the ARM-based products.</p> <p>If you want to add PE series products that are <u>not</u> ARM-based, see <i>Adding ATEN PDU</i>, page 62, for details.</p> <p>Note: When devices are added all of their ports are locked by default and must be unlocked. See <i>Transfer Settings</i>, page 96, for details. This allows you to add devices containing ports beyond the number allowed by the license. You can then select specific ones to unlock – thereby gaining access to critical ports while remaining within the license restrictions.</p> |
| ATEN PDUs | <p>Select this type to add PE Series Energy Intelligence PDUs into the CC2000 management system. The “PE series” here excludes ARM-based PE series products.</p> <p>If you want to add PE series products that are ARM-based see <i>Adding ATEN KVM</i>, page 58, for details.</p> |

| Type | Purpose |
|------------------|---|
| APC PDU | Select this type to add an APC Power Distribution Unit (PDU) into the CC2000 management system. The CC2000 supports simple device configuration, WebSSO, and power management for the following models: AP79xx, AP89xx, AP86xx. See <i>Adding an APC PDU</i> , page 65. |
| Aggregate Device | <p>Select this to create a logical device consisting of ports selected from ATEN/Altusen devices and some SPMs (e.g. IPMI, HP iLO2/3/5, IBM RSA II, Dell DRAC 5/6/8, Redfish-enabled device) that have been added to the CC2000 management system.</p> <p>This type of device is used to manage a device with multiple connection methods (KVM, power, and serial ports, for example), without having to use a separate connection for each. Each Aggregate Device counts as one node regardless of the number of ports it contains, so that creating aggregate devices and adding ports to them allows you to manage a number of ports beyond what the physical license restrictions permit. See <i>Adding an Aggregate Device</i>, page 76, for details.</p> <p>Note: 1. A port that has been made part of an aggregate device can only be used with that device. It cannot be assigned to any other device without being removed from the aggregate device.</p> <p>2. Once a port has been made part of an aggregate device, it is no longer treated as an individual port, and cannot be locked or unlocked manually. If at some point you want to treat this port as a physical port, or add it to a group device you must first delete it from the aggregate device.</p> |
| Blade Chassis | Select this to add a blade chassis. |
| Virtual host | Select this to add a VMware / Hyper-V / Citrix virtual host. |
| Generic Device | <p>Third party generic devices (routers, switches, etc.) can consist of any device that contains an Ethernet interface and can be accessed by its URL or IP Address via HTTP/HTTPS, or Telnet/SSH.</p> <p>Since these devices have no provision for CC management, they cannot be authenticated through the CC2000, and are not part of the CC2000's single sign on configuration. Generic devices do not occupy device node licenses. There is no proxy support for these devices (see page 243)</p> <p>When you select this type of device the CC2000 redirects to the device, itself. You must log in to the device using its own authentication procedure.</p> <p>Note: Generic Devices do not count against the number of licensed nodes.</p> |

| Type | Purpose |
|--------------|---|
| Group Device | <p>Up to 64 ports can be added to a group device. Group devices are also created as a composite of ports that exist on actual ATEN/Altusen devices. The differences between Group and Aggregate Devices are as follows:</p> <p>Once a physical port is added to an Aggregate device, it cannot be used with any other Aggregate Device – whereas a physical port can be added to any number of Group Devices</p> <p>Note:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Group Devices do not count against the number of licensed nodes. 2. A physical port that is added to more than one Group Device only counts as one license no matter how many Group Devices it is added to. 3. Group devices and the added ports are related to the display of panel array, please see <i>Panel Array Mode</i> on page 108. |

Table Headings

An explanation of the column headings is provided in the table below.

Device Column Headings

| Heading | Explanation |
|-------------|---|
| Name | The name given to the port when it was added to the CC2000 installation. |
| Model | The model of the device. |
| IP Address | For physical devices – the device's IP Address displays here. |
| MAC Address | For physical devices – the device's MAC Address displays here. |
| Alias | If you gave the port an alias, the alias name appears here. |
| Department | The department category of the device. |
| Location | The location category of the device. |
| Server | The server the device is connected to. |
| Operation | <p>The default action for accessing the device appears in this cell.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Click the arrow at the right of the table cell to see what other actions are available. ◆ Click your choice to open a session for the device. The various device operation choices are described in <i>Operation</i> on page 100. |
| Type | The type category of the device. |

| Heading | Explanation |
|---------|--|
| Status | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ For KVM devices, indicates whether the port is online or offline. ♦ For Serial devices, indicates whether the port is online or offline. ♦ For PDU devices, indicates whether the outlet port's power socket is On or Off. ♦ For Blade chassis, indicates whether the port is online, offline or unknown. |

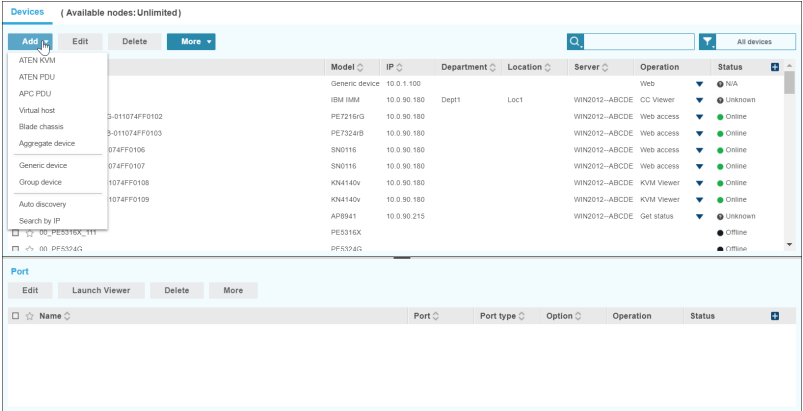
Port Column Headings

| Heading | Explanation |
|-----------|---|
| Name | The name given to the port when it was added to the CC2000 installation. |
| Alias | If you gave the port an alias, the alias name appears here. |
| Port | The port's port number on the device it belongs to. |
| Port Type | Indicates the kind of device that the port belongs to. |
| Status | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ For KVM ports, indicates whether the port is online or offline. ♦ For Serial ports, indicates whether the port is online or offline. ♦ For Power outlets, indicates whether the outlet port's power socket is On or Off. <p>Note: This category does not apply to Blade Chassis or individual blades, therefore <i>N/A</i> (not applicable) displays in this field for Blade Chassis, and <i>Unknown</i> displays for individual blades.</p> |
| Operation | <p>The default action for accessing the device/port appears in this cell.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Click the arrow at the right of the table cell to see what other actions (if any), are available. ♦ Click your choice to open a session for the port. |

Adding Device

Follow the steps below to add a device.

1. Click **Add** for a drop-down menu:



2. Click to select the type of device you would like to add from the list. A window will pop-up to add the device. The interface of the window depends on your selection.

The sections that follow describe the procedures involved for setting up each of the devices listed.

Adding ATEN KVM

This item refers to adding Aten KVM device into the CC2000 management system. CC2000 supports CN, CS, KH, KL, KN, PN, SN and PE series devices. The “PE series” here only refers to the ARM-based products.

If you want to add PE series products that are not ARM-based see *Adding ATEN PDU*, page 62, for details.

Note: Before attempting to add an Aten KVM device to the CC2000 server, make sure it has been recognized. See *Preliminary Procedures*, page 52, for details.

To add an Aten KVM,

1. Select *ATEN KVM* from the drop-down menu, a window will pop-up listing all the online devices that can be added:

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Name | Model | IP | MAC |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|----------|-------------|--------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 001-Sim-PE7216rB-011074FF0101 | PE7216rB | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0101 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 004-Sim-PE7324rG-011074FF0104 | PE7324rG | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0104 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 005-Sim-PE7324rJ-011074FF0105 | PE7324rJ | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0105 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 010-Sim-KN4140v-011074FF010A | KN4140v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff010a |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 013-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF010D | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff010d |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 014-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF010E | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff010e |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 015-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF010F | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff010f |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 016-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF0110 | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0110 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 017-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF0111 | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0111 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 019-Sim-SN0108-011074FF0113 | SN0108 | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0113 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 020-Sim-KN2140v-011074FF0114 | KN2140v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0114 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 021-Sim-KN2140v-011074FF0115 | KN2140v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0115 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 023-Sim-KN2124v-011074FF0117 | KN2124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0117 |

For information about **Restrictions** or **CC2000 Options**, see *Restrictions*, page 60 or *CC2000 Options*, page 61.

2. Click to check the checkbox of the device you wish to add.
3. Click **Next** for the Properties page:

Basic Information

Name: 001-Sim-PE7216rB-011074FF0101

Model: PE7216rB

MAC: 01:10:74:FF:01:01

Description: Dummy PE7216rB (for test only)

Department: <- Select Department ->

Location: <- Select Location ->

Type: <- Select Type ->

Contact information

Contact person:

Contact phone:

Trap destination

Email trap notification to: e.g. recipient@email.com

4. Fill in the fields according to the information provided in the table below:

| Field | Information |
|---------------------|--|
| Basic Information | <p>Name: Provide a name to identify the device. The default is the name given to the device under its independent configuration. If you change the name here, the change only takes place in the CC2000 database. The name on the original configuration remains the same.</p> <p>Model: The CC2000 recognizes the device model and fills in this field automatically. It cannot be edited. If the device is a Cat5e KVM switch, the KVM Adapter Cable model displays here.</p> <p>MAC Address: The CC2000 fills in this field automatically. It cannot be edited.</p> <p>Department: For organizational purposes you can establish department categories (R&D, for example), and assign devices to them. If you wish to assign this device to a department, drop down the list of departments (you have previously created – see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97), and click on the one you want the device to belong to.</p> <p>Location: For organizational purposes you can establish location categories (West Coast, for example), and assign devices to them. If you wish to assign this device to a location, drop down the list of locations (you have previously created – see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97), and click on the one you want the device to belong to.</p> <p>Type: For organizational purposes you can specify the type of device that this is. If you wish to do so, drop down the list of types (you have previously created – see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97), and click on the one you want.</p> <p>Description: If you wish to provide extra information to describe the device, enter it here. This field is optional.</p> |
| Contact Information | The name and telephone number of the device administrator. These fields are optional. |
| Trap Destination | The email address of the person you want to receive trap notifications. This field is optional. |
| Restrictions | <p>Hide IP Address from general users: As an added security measure, if this feature is enabled, it keeps the device's IP address from appearing in the Device List when users log in via their browser.</p> <p>Hide MAC Address from general users: As an added security measure, if this feature is enabled, it keeps the device's MAC address from appearing in the Device List when users log in via their browser.</p> |

| Field | Information |
|----------------|--|
| CC2000 Options | <p>Allow users to access the device through viewer or its web login page: As an added security measure, if this feature is not enabled, the device will only accept logins through the CC2000. While the device is connected to the CC2000 system, users cannot log in to the device using the device's own authentication system, and they can only manage the device through the CC2000's interface.</p> <p>Note: 1. If the device becomes disconnected from the CC2000 system, users will be able to log into the device using its own authentication system.</p> <p>2. If the checkbox is checked it means that other authentication is enabled and users can log into the device using its own authentication system.</p> <p>Enable device logs to be sent to CC2000: If this feature is enabled, the CC2000 acts as the device's log server – receiving and storing the device's tick event information, and having it available for retrieval.</p> <p>Disable PDU local schedule: Checking this option will disable the PDU's local schedule.</p> <p>Device session timeout: A web-accessed session to a device will time out if the session receives no input for a duration. Set the timeout duration by entering a number (2-99 minutes) in the field here. If 0 is entered, the session will not time out.</p> |

5. When you have finished, click **Add** to complete the procedure.

-
- Note:**
- ♦ For Cat5 KVM switches, only the ports that have a KVM adapter cable attached and are online are recognized and added to the Device List. This is because each adapter cable has its own independent identity and if it is not online there is no way for it to be recognized. Once a port has been added, it will appear in the list even if it is off line.
 - ♦ If you have difficulty adding ARM-based PE series PDU, refer to *Adding ARM-based PE series PDU* on page 248 for more details.
-

Adding ATEN PDU

This item refers to adding Aten PDU into the CC2000 management system:

The screenshot shows the 'ATEN PDU' configuration window with the 'Administrative' tab selected. The 'Properties' tab is also visible. The 'SNMP Model' is set to 'PE series'. Under 'Administrative settings', 'Auto detect' is checked. The 'Detect interval' is set to 120 seconds. The 'Specify IP' radio button is selected, and the 'Test connection' button is visible. The 'Scan subnet' radio button is also present. The 'Port' is set to 161, 'SNMP version' is v1, and 'Write community' is empty. The 'Timeout' is set to 10 seconds, and the 'Server' is set to WIN2012-ABCDEFG. 'Next' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom.

1. Fill in the fields according to the information provided in the table below:

| Field | Information |
|-----------------|--|
| SNMP Model | The “PE series” here refers to Energy Intelligence PDUs that are <u>not</u> ARM-based products. Note: To add PE series ARM-based products see <i>Adding ATEN KVM</i> , page 58, for details. |
| Auto detect | Enable this function to allow the system to automatically check if the device is online. Only a user with administrator privileges can enable this function. |
| Detect interval | Set the detect interval by entering a value between 30 and 300 seconds. This sets how often the system automatically checks that the device is online. |
| Specify IP | Key in the IP address of the device. Click the Test connection button to confirm that the IP address has been detected. |
| Scan subnet | Key in a range of subnet IP addresses that can help search for the device. |
| Port | Key in the port number used to access the device. The default port is 161. |
| SNMP version | Select the SNMP version to use: v1, v2c, or v3. |
| Write community | Key in the community value(s) if required by the SNMP version. |

| Field | Information |
|---------|---|
| Timeout | Key in the server timeout value. The range is between 10 and 120. |
| Server | Select the server to use. |

2. When you have finished with this page, click **Next**. The Properties page appears.

3. Fill in the fields according to the information provided in the table below:

| Field | Information |
|--------------------|---|
| Device Information | <p>Name: Provide a name to identify the device.</p> <p>Model: The CC2000 recognizes the device model and fills in this field automatically. It cannot be edited.</p> <p>Description: If you wish to provide extra information to describe the device, enter it here. This field is optional.</p> <p>Department: For organizational purpose you can establish department categories (R&D, for example), and assign devices to them (see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97). If you wish to assign this device to a department, use the drop-down menu of departments (you have previously created) and click the one you want the device to belong to.</p> <p>Location: For organizational purposes you can establish location categories (West Coast, for example), and assign devices to them (see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97). If you wish to assign this device to a location, use the drop-down menu of locations (you have previously created) and click the one you want the device to belong to.</p> <p>Type: Use the drop-down menu to select the device type.</p> |

| Field | Information |
|---------------------|--|
| Contact Information | Enter the name and telephone number of the administrator. These fields are optional. |
| Restrictions | Hide IP Address from general users: As an added security measure, if this feature is enabled, it keeps the device's IP address from appearing in the Device List when users log in via their browser. Hide MAC Address from general users: As an added security measure, if this feature is enabled, it keeps the device's MAC address from appearing in the Device List when users log in via their browser. |

4. When you have finished with this page, click **Add**.

Note: After adding a device, its ports are locked. See *Locking / Unlocking Devices*, page 98.

Adding an APC PDU

This item refers to adding APC PDU into the CC2000 management system.:

APC PDU

Administrative Properties Connectivity

☒ Auto detect (Administrator privilege required)

Detect interval: 120 (seconds)

IP: [] Test connection

Connect method: SSH

SSH port: 22

Username: []

Password: []

Timeout: 10 (seconds)

Server: WIN2012-ABCDEFG

Next Cancel

To add an APC PDU, do the following:

1. Fill in the fields according to the information provided in the table below:

| Field | Information |
|---------------------|--|
| Auto Detect | If you are adding one of the specifically mentioned types and enable Auto detect, the CC2000 will check if the device is online. Only a user with administrator privileges can enable this function. |
| Detect Interval | Set the detect interval by entering a value in seconds. This is how often the system automatically checks that the APC PDU is online. |
| IP | Key in the APC PDUs IP address. Click Test Connection to confirm that the IP has been correctly detected. |
| Connect Method | Select either SSH or Telnet from the drop-down menu. |
| SSH Port | Key in the access port used to connect to it (via browser). The default SSH port is 22; Telnet is 23. |
| Username / Password | Key in a username and password that will be required to access the APC PDU (via Telnet only). |
| Timeout | The amount of time to wait for a connection request to complete before cancelling the request. |
| Server | Select the CC2000 unit that the APC PDU server is connected under. |

2. When you have finished with this page, click **Next**. The Properties page appears.

The screenshot shows a window titled "APC PDU" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It has three tabs: "Administrative" (selected), "Properties", and "Connectivity". The "Administrative" tab contains the following sections:

- Basic information:**
 - Name: Text field containing "APC PDU_AP7931-90.16"
 - Model: Text field containing "AP7931"
 - Department: Drop-down menu showing "<- Select Department ->"
 - Location: Drop-down menu showing "<- Select Location ->"
 - Type: Drop-down menu showing "<- Select Type ->"
 - Description: Text area with a small upward arrow icon
- Contact information:**
 - Contact person: Text field containing "Contact person"
 - Contact phone: Text field containing "Contact phone"
- Restrictions:**
 - ☐ Hide IP address from general users
 - ☐ Hide MAC address from general users

At the bottom, there are three buttons: "Back", "Next" (highlighted in blue), and "Cancel".

3. Fill in the fields according to the information provided in the table below:

| Field | Information |
|---------------------|---|
| Device Information | <p>Name: Provide a name to identify the device.</p> <p>Model: The CC2000 recognizes the device model and fills in this field automatically. It cannot be edited.</p> <p>Department: For organizational purposes you can establish department categories (R&D, for example), and assign devices to them (see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97). If you wish to assign this device to a department, drop down the list of departments (you have previously created), and click on the one you want the device to belong to.</p> <p>Location: For organizational purposes you can establish location categories (West Coast, for example), and assign devices to them (see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97). If you wish to assign this device to a location, drop down the list of locations (you have previously created), and click on the one you want the device to belong to.</p> <p>Type: Use the drop-down menu to select the type of device it is.</p> <p>Description: If you wish to provide extra information to describe the device, enter it here. This field is optional.</p> |
| Contact Information | <p>The name and telephone number of the device administrator. These fields are optional.</p> |

| Field | Information |
|--------------|---|
| Restrictions | <p>Hide IP Address from general users: As an added security measure, if this feature is enabled, it keeps the device's IP address from appearing in the Device List when users log in via their browser.</p> <p>Hide MAC Address from general users: As an added security measure, if this feature is enabled, it keeps the device's MAC address from appearing in the Device List when users log in via their browser.</p> |

- When you have finished with this page, click **Next**. The Properties page appears. Check to enable web / SSH / Telnet sessions.

- When you have finished, click **Add** to complete the procedure.

Adding a Virtual Host

This item refers to adding Virtual Host into the CC2000 management system.

The screenshot shows a 'Virtual host' configuration window with the following fields and options:

- Device model:** VMware (selected from a dropdown)
- Administrative module settings:**
 - ☒ Auto detect (Administrator privilege required)
 - Detect interval:** 120 (seconds)
- IP address:** IP address (text field)
- Mapped IP:** Mapped IP (text field)
- Port:** 443 (text field)
- Username:** Username (text field)
- Password:** Password (text field)
- Server:** WIN2012-ABCDEFG (selected from a dropdown)

Buttons: Next, Cancel

1. Fill in the fields according to the information provided in the table below:

| Field | Information |
|---------------------|---|
| Device Model | Select either VMware, Citrix or HyperV from the drop-down menu. |
| Auto Detect | Enable this function so the system automatically checks that the virtual machine is online. Only a user with administrator privileges can enable this function. |
| Detect Interval | Set the detect interval by entering a value in seconds. This is how often the system automatically checks that the virtual machine is online. |
| IP Address / Port | Key in the virtual machine's IP address and the access port used to connect to it (via browser). The default port is 443. Click Test Connection to confirm that the IP and port settings have been correctly detected. |
| Mapped IP | The Mapped IP function is for VMware remote console support (VMRC through router/firewall). To enable the function, enter the virtual host's external IP address in the <i>Mapped IP</i> field. |
| Username / Password | Key in a username and password that will be required to access the virtual machine (via browser). |
| Server | Select the CC2000 unit that the Virtual Host server is connected under. |

- When you have finished with this page, click **Next**. The Properties page appears.

- Fill in the fields according to the information provided in the table below:

| Field | Information |
|---------------------|---|
| Device Information | <p>Name: Provide a name to identify the device.</p> <p>Model: The CC2000 recognizes the device model and fills in this field automatically. It cannot be edited.</p> <p>Description: If you wish to provide extra information to describe the device, enter it here. This field is optional.</p> <p>Department: For organizational purposes you can establish department categories (R&D, for example), and assign devices to them (see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97). If you wish to assign this device to a department, drop down the list of departments (you have previously created), and click on the one you want the device to belong to.</p> <p>Location: For organizational purposes you can establish location categories (West Coast, for example), and assign devices to them (see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97). If you wish to assign this device to a location, drop down the list of locations (you have previously created), and click on the one you want the device to belong to.</p> <p>Type: Use the drop-down menu to select the type of device it is.</p> |
| Contact Information | <p>The name and telephone number of the device administrator. These fields are optional.</p> |

| Field | Information |
|--------------|---|
| Restrictions | <p>Hide IP Address from general users: As an added security measure, if this feature is enabled, it keeps the device's IP address from appearing in the Device List when users log in via their browser.</p> <p>Hide MAC Address from general users: As an added security measure, if this feature is enabled, it keeps the device's MAC address from appearing in the Device List when users log in via their browser.</p> |

4. When you have finished with this page, click **Next**. The Connectivity page appears.

Virtual host

Administrative Properties **Connectivity** Virtual server/machine

Network information

Select network: Primary

Name: net1

IP address: IP address

Access type: HyperV

☐ Enable Web session
☐ Enable SSH session
☐ Enable telnet session
☐ Enable VNC session
☐ Enable RDP session

Back Next Cancel

5. Fill in the fields according to the information in the table, below:

| Field | Explanation |
|---------------------|---|
| Network Information | <p>Select network: If the server for the virtual host only has one network interface, select Primary. If it has more than one network interface, after you finish configuring the Primary one, come back to choose the additional ones and configure each of them in turn.</p> <p>Name: For convenience, each of the network interfaces can be named.</p> <p>IP Address: Enter the Virtual Host's IP address here.</p> <p>Access Type: Use the drop-down menu to select the access type.</p> |
| Sessions | Check to enable the sessions. |

6. When you have finished with this page, click **Next**. The Virtual server/machine page appears.

Virtual host

Administrative

Properties

Connectivity

Virtual server/machine

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Index | Name | Department | Location | Type | Description |
|-------------------------------------|-------|--------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|-------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 1 | ubuntu | <- Select Department -> | <- Select Location -> | <- Select Type -> | Description |

Back

Save

Cancel

7. Check the information and click **Save** to complete.

Adding a Blade Chassis

This item refers to adding Blade chassis into the CC2000 management system:

Blade chassis

Administrative

Properties

Connectivity

Blade

Device model

Auto detect

Administrative module settings

☒ Auto detect (Administrator privilege required)

Detect interval

120

(seconds)

IP address

IP address

Test connection

Connect method

SSH

SSH port

22

Username

Username

Password

Password

Timeout

10

(seconds)

Server

WIN2012-ABCDEFGH

Next

Cancel

1. Fill in the fields according to the information provided in the table below:

| Field | Information |
|--|---|
| Device Model | Use the drop-down menu to select the model type you are adding. |
| Auto detect | If you are adding one of the specifically mentioned Blade chassis Model types and enable Auto detect, the CC2000 will check if the device is online. Only a user with administrator privileges can enable this function. |
| Detect Interval | Set the detect interval by entering a value in seconds. This is how often the system automatically checks that the blade server is online. |
| IP Address / Connect method / SSH Port | If Auto detect is not being used, key in the blade server's IP address and the access port used to connect to it (via Telnet or SSH). Select the connection method. The default port is 22 (SSH). Click Test Connection to confirm that the IP and port settings have been correctly detected. |
| Username / Password | Key in a username and password that will be required to access the blade server (via Telnet or SSH). Note: Use an account with administrator privileges to get needed information. |
| Timeout | The amount of time to wait for a connection request to complete before canceling the request. |
| Server | Select the CC2000 unit that the Blade server is connected under. |

2. When you have finished with this page, click **Next**. The Properties page appears.

Blade chassis

Administrative Properties Connectivity Blade

Basic information

Name: IBM-Bc-E

Model: IBM BladeCenter E

Description: Description

Department: <- Select Department ->

Location: <- Select Location ->

Type: <- Select Type ->

Contact information

Contact person: Contact person

Contact phone: Contact phone

Restrictions

☐ Hide IP address from general users

Power control options

Back Next Cancel

3. Fill in the fields according to the information provided in the table below:

| Field | Information |
|---------------------|---|
| Device Information | <p>Name: Provide a name to identify the device.</p> <p>Model: The CC2000 recognizes the device model and fills in this field automatically. It cannot be edited.</p> <p>Description: If you wish to provide extra information to describe the device, enter it here. This field is optional.</p> <p>Department: For organizational purposes you can establish department categories (R&D, for example), and assign devices to them (see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97). If you wish to assign this device to a department, drop down the list of departments (you have previously created), and click on the one you want the device to belong to.</p> <p>Location: For organizational purposes you can establish location categories (West Coast, for example), and assign devices to them (see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97). If you wish to assign this device to a location, drop down the list of locations (you have previously created), and click on the one you want the device to belong to.</p> <p>Type: Use the drop-down menu to select the type of device it is.</p> |
| Contact Information | <p>The name and telephone number of the device administrator. These fields are optional.</p> |

| Field | Information |
|-----------------------|---|
| Restrictions | <p>Hide IP Address from general users: As an added security measure, if this feature is enabled, it keeps the device's IP address from appearing in the Device List when users log in via their browser.</p> <p>Hide MAC Address from general users: As an added security measure, if this feature is enabled, it keeps the device's MAC address from appearing in the Device List when users log in via their browser.</p> |
| Power Control Options | <p>Set the Power Control Options as outlined below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Click the box to enable confirmation for power operation Click the box to enable delay for power operation, and set the Power on delay/ Power off delay fields in seconds. |

- When you have finished with this page, click **Next**. The Connectivity page appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Blade chassis' configuration window with the 'Properties' tab selected. The window has a title bar with a close button. Below the title bar are four tabs: 'Administrative', 'Properties' (selected), 'Connectivity', and 'Blade'. The 'Properties' tab contains the following fields and options:

- 'Maximum number of slots' is a text input field containing '14'.
- 'Enable hotkey' is a checked checkbox.
- 'Switching hotkey sequence' is a dropdown menu showing 'NumLock + NumLock + SlotNumbe'.
- 'Network information' section:
 - 'Select network' is a dropdown menu showing 'Primary'.
 - 'Name' is a text input field containing 'net1'.
 - 'IP address' is a text input field containing 'IP address'.
 - 'Access type' is a dropdown menu showing 'Generic'.
- Below the network information are four unchecked checkboxes: 'Enable Web session', 'Enable SSH session', 'Enable telnet session', and 'Enable VNC session'.
- At the bottom are three buttons: 'Back', 'Next' (highlighted in blue), and 'Cancel'.

- Fill in the fields according to the information in the table below:
 - The *Maximum number of slots* field is for information purposes and can't be configured on supported chassis. It can only be set on generic chassis.

- For the *Blade switching hotkey*, this information is filled in automatically with the details of the assigned model.

| Field | Explanation |
|---------------------|--|
| Network Information | <p>Select network: If the server for the blade chassis only has one network interface, select Primary. If it has more than one network interface, after you finish configuring the Primary one, come back to choose the additional ones and configure each of them in turn.</p> <p>Name: For convenience, each of the network interfaces can be named.</p> <p>IP Address: Enter the Virtual Host's IP address here.</p> <p>Access Type: Use the drop-down menu to select the access type.</p> |
| Sessions | Check to enable the sessions. |

- When you have finished with this page, click **Next**. The Blade page appears.

| Slot No. | Name | Department | Location | Type | Description |
|---------------------------------------|------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|-------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 | SN#YK10807CH11Z | <- Select Department -> | <- Select Location -> | <- Select Type -> | Description |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2 | SN#ZK124X71G14V | <- Select Department -> | <- Select Location -> | <- Select Type -> | Description |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 3 | IBM-Bc-E_slot_3 | <- Select Department -> | <- Select Location -> | <- Select Type -> | Description |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 4 | IBM-Bc-E_slot_4 | <- Select Department -> | <- Select Location -> | <- Select Type -> | Description |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 5 | IBM-Bc-E_slot_5 | <- Select Department -> | <- Select Location -> | <- Select Type -> | Description |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 6 | IBM-Bc-E_slot_6 | <- Select Department -> | <- Select Location -> | <- Select Type -> | Description |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 7 | IBM-Bc-E_slot_7 | <- Select Department -> | <- Select Location -> | <- Select Type -> | Description |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 8 | IBM-Bc-E_slot_8 | <- Select Department -> | <- Select Location -> | <- Select Type -> | Description |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 9 | IBM-Bc-E_slot_9 | <- Select Department -> | <- Select Location -> | <- Select Type -> | Description |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 10 | IBM-Bc-E_slot_10 | <- Select Department -> | <- Select Location -> | <- Select Type -> | Description |

- For each blade, you can specify its Department, Location, and Type, and provide a brief Description.
- When you have finished, click **Save** to complete the procedure.

Adding an Aggregate Device

This item refers to adding Aggregate device into the CC2000 management system:

The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Aggregate device" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It has three tabs: "Administrative" (selected), "Properties", and "Connectivity". Under the "Administrative" tab, there are several fields: "Device model" is a dropdown menu set to "Generic"; "Administrative module settings" includes an unchecked checkbox for "Auto detect (Administrator privilege required)"; "Detect interval" is a text box with "120" and "(seconds)" next to it; "IP address" is a text box with "IP address" and a "Test connection" button to its right; "Connect method" is a dropdown menu set to "None"; "Timeout" is a text box with "10" and "(seconds)" next to it; and "Server" is a dropdown menu set to "WIN2012-ABCDEFG". At the bottom, there are "Next" and "Cancel" buttons.

Note: See *Aggregate Device* on page 55 for an explanation of aggregate devices.

Follow the steps below to add an Aggregate Device.

1. On the administrative page, select the Device Model from the drop-down menu and fill in the fields according to the information provided in the table below:

Note:

- ♦ The available fields depend on the selected Device Model.
- ♦ Redfish-enabled HP iLO 5 and Redfish-enabled Dell iDRAC 8 are supported if you select *Redfish-enabled Device* as the Device Model.

| Field | Information |
|-----------------|--|
| Auto Detect | If you are adding one of the specifically mentioned Aggregate Device Model types and enable Auto detect, the CC2000 will check if the device is online. Only a user with administrator privileges can enable this function. |
| Detect Interval | Set the detect interval by entering a value in seconds. This is how often the system automatically checks that the Aggregate Device is online. |

| Field | Information |
|---------------------|--|
| IP Address | Enter the Aggregate Device's IP address. Click Test Connection to confirm that the IP has been correctly detected. |
| Connect Method | For IPMI devices, connect method will be IPMI only. For Redfish-enabled Device, connect method will be HTTPS only. For everything else, select either SSH or Telnet from the drop-down menu. |
| Port | Enter the access port used to connect to it. Default SSH port: 22 Default Telnet port: 23 Default IPMI port: 623 Default HTTPS port: 443 |
| Username / Password | Enter a username and password required to access the Aggregate Device. |
| Timeout | The amount of time to wait for a connection request to complete before canceling the request. |
| Server | Select the CC2000 unit that the Aggregate Device server is connected under. |

- When finished, click **Next** for the Properties page.

The screenshot shows the 'Aggregate device' configuration window with the 'Properties' tab selected. The window has a title bar with a close button (X) and three tabs: 'Administrative', 'Properties' (active), and 'Connectivity'. The 'Properties' tab contains several sections: 'Basic information' with fields for Name (Dell Server), Model (Dell DRAC 5), Description (Description), Department (Select Department), Location (Select Location), and Type (Select Type); 'Contact information' with fields for Contact person and Contact phone; 'Restrictions' with a checkbox for 'Hide IP address from general users'; and 'Power control options'. At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'Back', 'Next' (highlighted in blue), and 'Cancel'.

3. Fill in the fields according to the information provided in the table below:

| Field | Information |
|-----------------------|---|
| Device Information | <p>Name: Provide a name to identify the device.</p> <p>Model: The CC2000 recognizes the device model and fills in this field automatically. It cannot be edited.</p> <p>Description: If you wish to provide extra information to describe the device, enter it here. This field is optional.</p> <p>Department: For organizational purposes you can establish department categories (R&D, for example), and assign devices to them (see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97). If you wish to assign this device to a department, drop down the list of departments (you have previously created), and click on the one you want the device to belong to.</p> <p>Location: For organizational purposes you can establish location categories (West Coast, for example), and assign devices to them (see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97). If you wish to assign this device to a location, drop down the list of locations (you have previously created), and click on the one you want the device to belong to.</p> <p>Type: Use the drop-down menu to select the type of device it is.</p> |
| Contact Information | The name and telephone number of the device administrator. These fields are optional. |
| Restrictions | <p>Hide IP Address from general users: As an added security measure, if this feature is enabled, it keeps the device's IP address from appearing in the Device List when users log in via their browser.</p> <p>Hide MAC Address from general users: As an added security measure, if this feature is enabled, it keeps the device's MAC address from appearing in the Device List when users log in via their browser.</p> |
| Power Control Options | <p>Set the Power Control Options as outlined below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">◆ Check the box to enable confirmation for power operation◆ Check the box to enable delay for power operation, and enter the Power on delay/ Power off delay fields in seconds. |

4. When finished, click **Next** for the Connectivity page.

Aggregate device

Administrative

Properties

Connectivity

Network information

Select network

Primary

Name

net1

IP address

IP address

Access type

Generic

☐ Enable Web session

☐ Enable SSH session

☐ Enable telnet session

☐ Enable VNC session

☐ Enable RDP session

☐ Enable SPM (Service Processor Management)

Back

Save

Cancel

5. Fill in the fields according to the information in the table below:

| Field | Explanation |
|---------------------|---|
| Network Information | <p>Select network: If the server for the aggregate device only has one network interface, select Primary. If it has more than one network interface, after you finish configuring the Primary one, come back to choose the additional ones and configure each of them in turn.</p> <p>Name: For convenience, each of the network interfaces can be named.</p> <p>IP Address: Enter the Virtual Host's IP address here.</p> <p>Access Type: Use the drop-down menu to select the access type.</p> |
| Web Session | <p>Check to enable web operation. The drop-down menu of the Operation column in the device list (upper screen) will reflect its availability.</p> <p>URL: To access the Aggregate Device server via the Web, enter the URL that will bring up its management page.</p> <p>Enable SSO: Check this box to enable single sign on functionality, and then select which credentials to use.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">◆ Select <i>Use login user credentials</i> to use the same username and password as the CC2000 user account.◆ Select <i>Use following credentials</i> and enter new credentials in the fields below. <p>Login name, Password: Fill in these fields according to the Aggregate Device server's authentication and authorization procedures.</p> |

| Field | Explanation |
|------------------------------------|---|
| SSH/Telnet Session | <p>Check to enable SSH/Telnet operation. The drop-down menu of the Operation column in the device list (upper screen) will reflect its availability.</p> <p>IP address, Login name, Password, SSH / Telnet port: To access the Aggregate Device server via an SSH / Telnet session, enter appropriate information into these fields according to the Aggregate Device server's authentication and authorization procedures.</p> <p>Note: An SSH session also requires entering login string information</p> |
| VNC Session | <p>Check to enable VNC operation. The drop-down menu of the Operation column in the device list (upper screen) will reflect its availability.</p> <p>Port: Enter the port number for the VNC session</p> <p>Enable SSO: Check this box to enable single sign on functionality, and then enter <i>View only</i> and <i>Full control</i> passwords.</p> |
| RDP Session | <p>Check to enable RDP operation. The drop-down menu of the Operation column in the device list (upper screen) will reflect its availability.</p> <p>RDP Port: Enter the port number for the RDP session.</p> <p>Enable SSO: Check this box to enable single sign on functionality, and then select which credentials to use.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Select <i>Use login user credentials</i> to use the same account username and password as the CC2000 user account. ◆ Select <i>Use following credentials</i> and enter new credentials in the fields below. |
| SPM (Service Processor Management) | <p>Check to enable SPM operation. The drop-down menu of the Operation column in the device list (upper screen) will reflect its availability.</p> <p>SPM Method: Select from the drop-down menu. Options are IPMI, HP iLO 2, HP iLO 3, HP iLO 5, IBM RSA II, IBM IMM, Dell DRAC 5, Dell iDRAC 6 Blade (modular), Dell iDRAC 6 Standard (monolithic), Dell iDRAC 8, Redfish-enabled Dell iDRAC 8 and Redfish-enabled HP iLO 5.</p> <p>Port: Enter the port number for the SPM session.</p> <p>Login name, Password: Fill in these fields according to the SPM server's authentication and authorization procedures.</p> <p>Timeout: Set the amount of time to wait for a connection request to complete before cancelling the request.</p> |

6. When finished, click **Save** to complete the procedure.

For operations in the drop-down menu of the Operation column, refer to *Operation* on page 100.

Adding a Generic Device

This item refers to adding Generic device into the CC2000 management system:

Note: See *Generic Device*, page 55 for an explanation of generic devices.

1. Fill in the fields according to the information provided in the table below:

| Field | Information |
|---------------------|---|
| Basic Information | <p>Name: Provide a name to identify the device.</p> <p>Department: For organizational purposes you can establish department categories (R&D, for example), and assign devices to them (see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97). If you wish to assign this device to a department, drop down the list of departments (you have previously created), and click on the one you want the device to belong to.</p> <p>Location: For organizational purposes you can establish location categories (West Coast, for example), and assign devices to them (see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97). If you wish to assign this device to a location, drop down the list of locations (you have previously created), and click on the one you want the device to belong to.</p> <p>Type: Use the drop-down menu to select the type of device it is.</p> <p>Description: If you wish to provide extra information to describe the device, enter it here. This field is optional.</p> |
| Contact Information | <p>The name and telephone number of the device administrator. These fields are optional.</p> |

| Field | Information |
|---------------------|--|
| Network Information | <p>Fill in the fields according to the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">◆ If the Generic Device is to be accessed via a web browser, key its web (or IP) address in the URL field.◆ If the Generic Device is to be accessed via Telnet or SSH, key in the IP Address in the IP Address field and the Telnet and/or SSH port numbers in their corresponding fields.◆ If the Generic Device has all three methods available, you can fill in all or any of them that you wish. |
| Restrictions | <p>As an added security measure, if <i>Hide IP Address from general users</i> is enabled, the device's IP address won't appear in the Device List. This setting is optional.</p> |

2. When you have finished, click **Add** to complete the procedure.

Adding a Group Device

This item refers to adding Group device into the CC2000 management system:

Group device

Properties

Basic information

Name

Name

Department

<- Select Department ->

Location

<- Select Location ->

Type

<- Select Type ->

Description

Description

Contact information

Contact person

Contact person

Contact phone

Contact phone

Add

Cancel

1. Fill in the fields according to the information provided in the table below:

| Field | Information |
|---------------------|---|
| Basic Information | <p>Name: Provide a name to identify the device.</p> <p>Department: For organizational purposes you can establish department categories (R&D, for example), and assign devices to them (see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97). If you wish to assign this device to a department, drop down the list of departments (you have previously created), and click on the one you want the device to belong to.</p> <p>Location: For organizational purposes you can establish location categories (West Coast, for example), and assign devices to them (see <i>Category Management</i> on page 97). If you wish to assign this device to a location, drop down the list of locations (you have previously created), and click on the one you want the device to belong to.</p> <p>Type: Use the drop-down menu to select the type of device it is.</p> <p>Description: If you wish to provide extra information to describe the device, enter it here. This field is optional.</p> |
| Contact Information | The name and telephone number of the device administrator. These fields are optional. |

2. When you have finished, click **Add** to complete the procedure.

Note: 1. Refer back to *Group Device*, page 56, for an explanation of the differences between Aggregate and Group devices.

2. A port can belong to any number of Group devices. When a port is made part of a Group Device it retains the locked/unlocked status of the original physical port. If you lock or unlock any of these ports, all the ports – including the original physical port – change to the new locked/unlocked status,
-

Auto Discovery

This item refers to adding devices into the CC2000 management system using the Auto discovery option.

The Auto discovery window is shown below:

| Name | Model | IP | MAC | Server | Description |
|-------------------------------|----------|-------------|--------------|--------|--------------------------------|
| 001-Sim-PE7216B-011074FF0101 | PE7216B | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0101 | | Dummy PE7216B (for test only) |
| 004-Sim-PE7324rG-011074FF0104 | PE7324rG | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0104 | | Dummy PE7324rG (for test only) |
| 005-Sim-PE7324rJ-011074FF0105 | PE7324rJ | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0105 | | Dummy PE7324rJ (for test only) |
| 013-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF010D | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff010d | | Dummy KN4124v (for test only) |
| 014-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF010E | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff010e | | Dummy KN4124v (for test only) |
| 015-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF010F | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff010f | | Dummy KN4124v (for test only) |
| 016-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF0110 | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0110 | | Dummy KN4124v (for test only) |
| 017-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF0111 | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0111 | | Dummy KN4124v (for test only) |
| 019-Sim-SN0108-011074FF0113 | SN0108 | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0113 | | Dummy SN0108 (for test only) |
| 020-Sim-KN2140v-011074FF0114 | KN2140v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0114 | | Dummy KN2140v (for test only) |
| 021-Sim-KN2140v-011074FF0115 | KN2140v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0115 | | Dummy KN2140v (for test only) |
| 023-Sim-KN2124v-011074FF0117 | KN2124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0117 | | Dummy KN2124v (for test only) |
| 024-Sim-SN0132-011074FF0118 | SN0132 | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0118 | | Dummy SN0132 (for test only) |

Use the radio buttons to select what type of devices to display in the table (ATEN devices, ATEN PDUs or Other servers or devices).

Check to select the device you wish to add and click **Add**.

Auto discovery (004-Sim-PE7324rG-011074FF0104)

Properties

Basic Information

Name: 004-Sim-PE7324rG-011074FF0104

Model: PE7324rG

MAC: 01:10:74:FF:01:04

Description: Dummy PE7324rG (for test only)

Department: <- Select Department ->

Location: <- Select Location ->

Type: <- Select Type ->

Contact Information

Contact person:

Contact phone:

Trap destination

Email trap notification to: e.g. recipient@email.com

Add **Cancel**

Fill in the Properties fields and click **Add**.

Refer to the sections above if you wish to modify any of the information fields.

Search by IP

This item refers to adding devices into the CC2000 management system using the Search by IP option.

The Search by IP window is shown below:

1. Fill in the fields according to the information provided in the table, below:

| Field | Information |
|------------------------|---|
| Start IP | Enter the IP address to set the beginning of a search scope. |
| IP Range (1~255) | Enter a number (1~255) to set the end of a search scope. |
| Server | Use the drop-down menu to select the CC2000 server that the device is connected to. |
| Search via HTTP/HTTPS | If you check this box, use the drop-down menu to select the Protocol and enter the Service port number. This will search for devices that match the HTTP or HTTPS settings. |
| Search via SNMP v1/v2c | If you check this box, fill in the related SNMP information for the Port, SNMP version, Write community and Timeout. This will search for devices that use the SNMP v1/2c protocol. |
| Search via SNMP v3 | If you check this box it will search for devices that use the SNMP v3 protocol. |

2. Click **Next** and a table will appear with the results. Use the radio buttons to select what type of devices to display in the table (ATEN devices, ATEN PDUs or Other servers or devices):

Search by IP

1 Search options

2 Select devices to add

● ATEN KVM (136)

● ATEN PDU (0)

● Other servers or devices (22)

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Name | Model | IP | MAC | Server | Description |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|----------|-------------|--------------|--------|--------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 001-Sim-PE7216rB-011074FF0101 | PE7216rB | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0101 | | Dummy PE7216rB (for test only) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 004-Sim-PE7324rG-011074FF0104 | PE7324rG | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0104 | | Dummy PE7324rG (for test only) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 005-Sim-PE7324rJ-011074FF0105 | PE7324rJ | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0105 | | Dummy PE7324rJ (for test only) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 013-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF010D | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff010d | | Dummy KN4124v (for test only) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 014-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF010E | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff010e | | Dummy KN4124v (for test only) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 015-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF010F | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff010f | | Dummy KN4124v (for test only) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 016-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF0110 | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0110 | | Dummy KN4124v (for test only) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 017-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF0111 | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0111 | | Dummy KN4124v (for test only) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 019-Sim-SN0108-011074FF0113 | SN0108 | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0113 | | Dummy SN0116 (for test Only) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 020-Sim-KN2140v-011074FF0114 | KN2140v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0114 | | Dummy KN2140v (for test only) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 021-Sim-KN2140v-011074FF0115 | KN2140v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0115 | | Dummy KN2140v (for test only) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 022-Sim-KN2140v-011074FF0117 | KN2140v | 10.0.90.180 | 011074ff0117 | | Dummy KN2140v (for test only) |

Back

Add

Close

The *Description* column reveals one of three results:

| Result | Information |
|------------|---|
| Empty | No such device or server found. |
| IP Matched | A device or server has been found in CC2000 with the same IP address but of a different type. |
| Matched | A device or server has been found in CC2000 that matches both the IP address and type. |

3. Check the checkbox of the device or server you would like to add and click **Add**.

Search by IP (PE7216rB-011074FF0101)

● Properties

Basic Information

Name

PE7216rB-011074FF0101

Model

PE7216rB

MAC

01:10:74:FF:01:01

Description

PE7216rB (for test only)

Department

<- Select Department ->

Location

<- Select Location ->

Type

<- Select Type ->

Contact Information

Contact person

Contact person

Contact phone

Contact phone

Trap destination

Email trap notification to

e.g. recipient@email.com

Add

Cancel

4. Fill in the Properties fields and click **Add**.

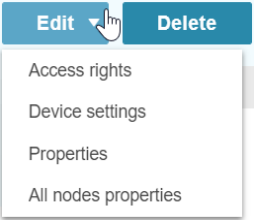
Refer to the sections above if you wish to modify any of the information fields.

5. When you have finished, click **Add** to complete the procedure.

Editing Devices

Follow the steps below if you wish to edit a device.

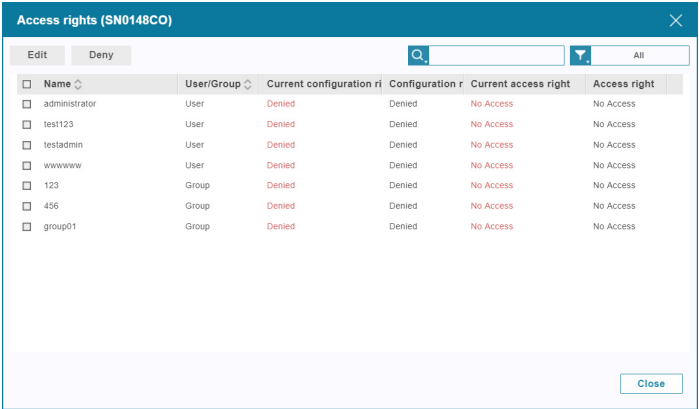
1. Check the device you wish to edit and click *Edit* for a drop-down menu:



2. Click to select what you wish to edit and refer to the following sections.

Access rights

Clicking *Access rights* will bring out a window. An example is shown:



To edit access rights of a user, check the user and click *Edit*. Another window will pop up. Access rights options will be different for different device type, refer to the sections below.

Note: You can also use the pencil icon to edit the access rights of a user when you move your cursor over a user row.

■ ATEN KVM

The options for Aten KVM devices is shown below:



Set the configuration rights for the user or group:

- ♦ **Allowed** – The user or group can configure the device's settings.
- ♦ **Denied** – The user or group cannot configure the device's settings.

Set the access rights for the user or group:

- ♦ **Full access (operation and configuration)** – The user or group can perform all configurations and operations.
- ♦ **Operation only** – The user or group can perform all operations.
- ♦ **View Only** – The user or group can only view the device.
- ♦ **No Access** – The user or group cannot access the device.

■ ATEN PDU

The options for Aten PDU is shown below:



Set the configuration rights for the user or group:

- ♦ **Allowed** – The user or group can configure the device's settings.
- ♦ **Denied** – The user or group cannot configure the device's settings.

Check to set the access rights for the user or group:

- ♦ **Web** – The user or group can access the device via a web session.

■ APC PDU

The options for APC PDU is shown below:



Set the configuration rights for the user or group:

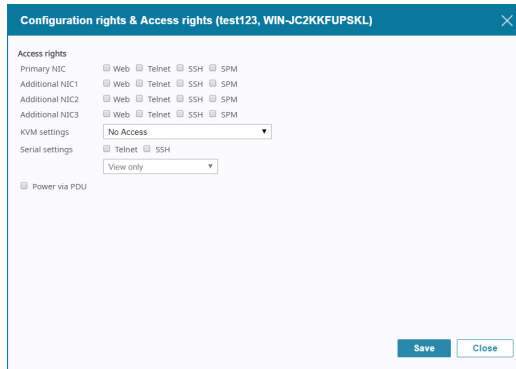
- ♦ **Allowed** – The user or group can configure the device's settings.
- ♦ **Denied** – The user or group cannot configure the device's settings.

Check to set the access rights for the user or group:

- ♦ **Web** – The user or group can access the device via a web session.
- ♦ **Telnet** – The user or group can access the device via a Telnet session.
- ♦ **SSH** – The user or group can access the device via a SSH session.

■ Virtual Host

The options for Virtual Host is shown below:



Check to set the access rights for the user or group:

- **Primary NIC** – Specify the network protocol(s) for this NIC.
- **Additional NIC1** – Specify the network protocol(s) for this NIC
- **Additional NIC2** – Specify the network protocol(s) for this NIC.
- **Additional NIC3** – Specify the network protocol(s) for this NIC.
- **KVM settings** – Select the access rights. Refer to the table below:

| Rights | Explanation |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Full access and VM (Read / Write) | The user can access the device (or specified ports on the device), view the screen and can perform I/O operations on it with the keyboard and mouse. The user also has read/write rights to use the virtual media function. |
| Full access and VM (Read Only) | The user can access the device (or specified ports on the device), view the screen and can perform I/O operations on it with the keyboard and mouse. The user also has read only rights for the virtual media function. |
| Full access | The user can access the device (or specified ports on the device), view the screen and can perform I/O operations on it with the keyboard and mouse. |
| View only | The user can access the device (or specified ports on the device), and view the screen, but cannot perform any operations on it. |
| No access | The user has no access to the device (or specified ports on the device). The device (or the specified ports) will not show up in the <i>Port Access Sidebar</i> or List. |

- **Serial settings** – Select the network protocol(s) and the access rights (full access and broadcast, full access and view only).
- **Power via PDU** – Check/uncheck to enable/disable.

■ **Blade Chassis / Aggregate Device**

The options for blade chassis / aggregate device is shown below:

Configuration rights & Access rights (01, BLADE)

Access rights

Primary NIC

☐ Web ☐ Telnet ☐ SSH ☐ RDP ☐ SPM

☐ VNC

Additional NIC1

☐ Web ☐ Telnet ☐ SSH ☐ RDP ☐ SPM

☐ VNC

Additional NIC2

☐ Web ☐ Telnet ☐ SSH ☐ RDP ☐ SPM

☐ VNC

Additional NIC3

☐ Web ☐ Telnet ☐ SSH ☐ RDP ☐ SPM

☐ VNC

KVM settings

Serial settings

☐ Telnet ☐ SSH

☐ Power via PDU

Save Close

Check to set the access rights for the user or group:

- ♦ **Primary NIC** – Specify the network protocol(s) for this NIC.
- ♦ **Additional NIC1** – Specify the network protocol(s) for this NIC
- ♦ **Additional NIC2** – Specify the network protocol(s) for this NIC.
- ♦ **Additional NIC3** – Specify the network protocol(s) for this NIC.
- ♦ **KVM settings** – Select the access rights. Refer to the table below:

| Rights | Explanation |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Full access and VM (Read / Write) | The user can access the device (or specified ports on the device), view the screen and can perform I/O operations on it with the keyboard and mouse. The user also has read/write rights to use the virtual media function. |
| Full access and VM (Read Only) | The user can access the device (or specified ports on the device), view the screen and can perform I/O operations on it with the keyboard and mouse. The user also has read only rights for the virtual media function. |
| Full access | The user can access the device (or specified ports on the device), view the screen and can perform I/O operations on it with the keyboard and mouse. |
| View only | The user can access the device (or specified ports on the device), and view the screen, but cannot perform any operations on it. |
| No access | The user has no access to the device (or specified ports on the device). The device (or the specified ports) will not show up in the <i>Port Access</i> Sidebar or List. |

- ♦ **Serial settings** – Select the network protocol(s) and the access rights (full access and broadcast, full access and view only).
- ♦ **Power via PDU** – Check/uncheck to enable/disable.

■ Generic Device

The options for generic device is shown below:



Check to set the access rights for the user or group:

- ♦ **Web** – The user or group can access the device via a web session.
- ♦ **Telnet** – The user or group can access the device via a Telnet session.
- ♦ **SSH** – The user or group can access the device via a SSH session.

Device Setting

To configure settings for a device, check the device’s checkbox and select **Device settings**. A window will pop-up. An example is shown:

Device settings (Carter)

Device Information

Date/Time

Network Settings

Sensor Information

POP Information

System settings

PDU model

PG8208A

PDU firmware version

9.0.061

MAC

00:10:74:9D:13:41

Device name

Carter

Rack location name

Rack location name

Door sensor 1 type

Inductive Proximity (EA1441)

Door sensor 2 type

Inductive Proximity (EA1441)

Threshold settings

Minimum current (A)

1.0

0~18

Maximum current (A)

2.0

0~18

Minimum voltage (V)

Minimum voltage (V)

90~260

Maximum voltage (V)

Maximum voltage (V)

90~260

Maximum power (W)

Maximum power (W)

0~9999.9

Save

Close

Use the side menu to select the configurable category, configure the appropriate fields and click **Save**. For details of the configurable fields, refer to the device’s manual.

If you wish to go to the device’s configuration webpage, click the drop-down menu under the **Operation** column and select **Web access**. An example is shown:

| | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|---------|--------------|-------------------|---------------|-------------|------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Carter | PG8208A | 10.5.162.105 | 00:10:74:9D:13:41 | WIN2012-ABCDE | Get status | ● Power On |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 037-PN9108-011074FF0125 | PN9108 | | | | Get status | ● Offline |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 2-PN0108 | PN0108 | | | | Web access | ● Offline |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 3-PN0108 | PN0108 | | | | All On | ● Offline |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 4-PN0108 | PN0108 | | | | All Off | ● Offline |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | | PN0108 | | | | All Restart | ● Offline |

Page: 1

Items per page: 100

View PDU status

Displaying 1-100

Properties

You can modify **Properties** of devices here. For information of the options available for different devices, refer to the corresponding device type in *Adding Device* on page 58.

All Nodes Properties

Clicking this button brings up a page listing all of the items nested underneath the device. This page allows you to configure (or reconfigure) the Department, Location, Type, Description, and Trap Destination of each nested (child) item.

Deleting Devices

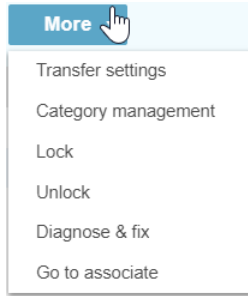
To delete a device(s), check to select the device(s) and click **Delete**.


A confirmation message will pop up, click **Yes** to delete the device(s).

-
- Note:**
1. You can delete more than one device by checking as many of them as you require. You can delete all of them at once by checking the box at the top of the column.
 2. When you delete an Aggregate Device, all of its ports return to their original physical devices with their status changed to locked.
-

More

More configuration options are available here. Click *More* for a drop-down menu as shown:



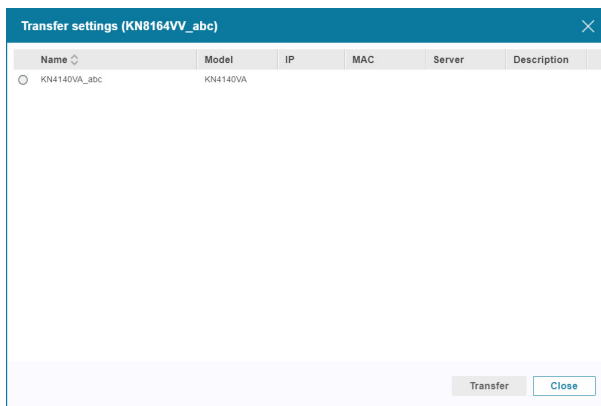
Note: You can also use the More icon  to access the More configuration options when you move your cursor over a user row.

The configurations are described in the following sections.

Transfer Settings

This function allows you to transfer the device settings and access rights from a source device to the selected device.

Check to select a device (e.g. device A) and click *Transfer* for the pop-up page shown below:



Choose a source device (e.g. device B) and click *Transfer* (bottom right-hand corner). A confirmation message will appear asking you to confirm the

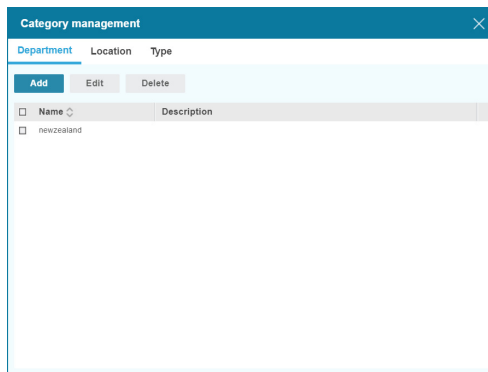
transfer. The CC2000 will transfer all device settings (excluding Device ID, model name and port number) and access rights of the source device (device B) to the selected device (device A). The transfer does not affect the settings of the source device.

Category Management

For convenience and ease of management, the devices can be organized into *Departments*, *Locations*, and *Types* categories. To use this organizational scheme, you would first create appropriate categories (such as *R&D* and *Manufacturing* under Departments; *East Coast Operations* under Locations; and *Power* under Types), and then assign devices to them (from the device's Properties page), as described in the sections that follow.

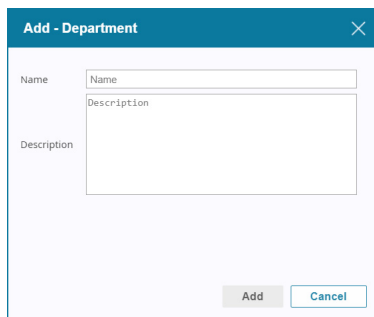
To create a Department, Location, or Type, do the following:

1. Click **More** and click to select **Category management**. A Category management page will pop up:



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Category management" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Inside the dialog, there are three tabs: "Department" (selected), "Location", and "Type". Below the tabs, there are three buttons: "Add" (highlighted in blue), "Edit", and "Delete". Below these buttons is a table with two columns: "Name" and "Description". The table has one row with the text "newzealand" under the "Name" column.

2. Click **Add**. The Add Department (or Location or Type) page will pop up:



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add - Department" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Inside the dialog, there are two text input fields: "Name" and "Description". Below these fields is a large text area for "Description". At the bottom right of the dialog, there are two buttons: "Add" and "Cancel".

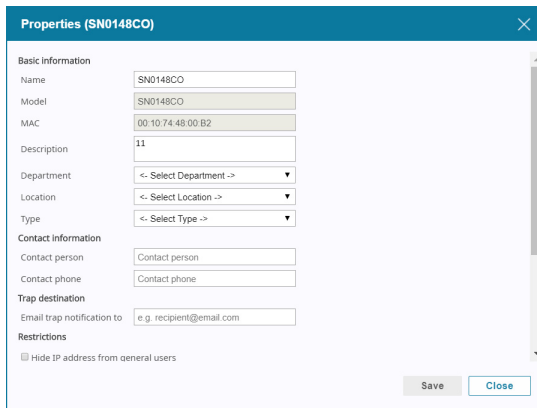
3. Fill in the Name and Description fields, and click **Add**.

To edit a Department, Location, or Type, check the item and click **Edit**. Edit the name and description fields and click **Save**.

To delete a Department, Location, or Type, check the item(s) and click **Delete**. A confirmation message will pop up, click **Yes** to delete the item(s).

To assign a device or port to a Department, Location, or Type, do the following:


1. Check to select a device/port on the Device page.
2. Click **Edit** and select **Properties**. A properties window will pop up as shown:



3. Identify where Department, Location and Type is, click their corresponding drop-down menu to select the category you wish to assign the device/port to.
4. Click **Save** to save the configuration.

Locking / Unlocking Devices

When physical devices are added to the CC2000 management system, their ports are locked by default – to make a port available, it must be unlocked.

Lock and **Unlock** allow you to lock and unlock all ports on the selected device. A locked port will have a lock icon  appearing in the last column of the lower screen (port) table. The unlocked ports will not have any icons.


To lock or unlock a device, check to select the device(s) on the upper screen. Click **More** and click **Lock** or **Unlock**.

Locking and unlocking individual ports are the same, except you operate in the lower screen.


Note: Ports are automatically unlocked when they are added to an Aggregate Device, but if you only want to use one or two of the device's physical ports, it is not necessary to go through the procedure involved in creating an Aggregate Device to do so. Simply select the target port(s) and click **Unlock**.

Diagnose & Fix

When a device encounters a problem (e.g. changing dongle port), you can click **Diagnose & fix** to fix the problem. The problem will be logged and a warning icon may appear in the last column of the device table (upper screen).

If a device can be diagnosed & fixed, a **Diagnose & fix** icon  will appear in the last column of the upper screen (device) table.

Go to Associate

Devices/ports with the  icon at the end of their name means they have associated devices/ports.

Selecting this option or clicking the icon will bring you to the associated device/port table.

Associate is used for aggregate devices that can associate different ports on different devices in order to more easily manage ports.

Operation

Depends on the selected device, various port operation methods are available for access and control. Click the drop-down menu in the Operation column to select an operation method. These are explained in the following sections.

Get Status

To update the status of the device/server, click to select **Get Status**.

Shutdown

To shut down the device/server, click to select **Shutdown**.

Force Off

To force the device/server to shut down, click to select **Force Off**.

Restart

To restart the device/server, click to select **Restart**.

Force Restart

To force the device/server to restart, click to select **Force Restart**.

On

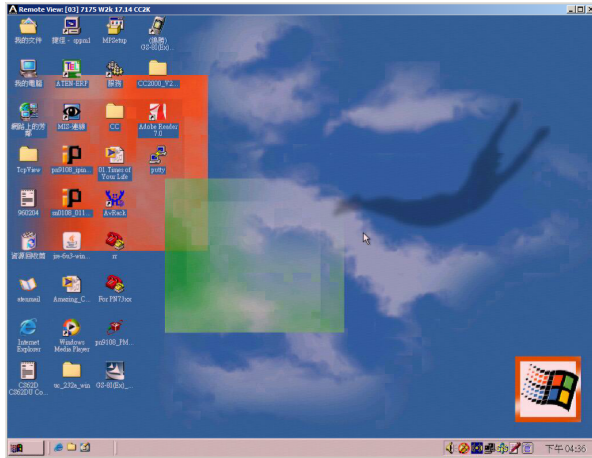
To turn on the device/server, click to select **On**.

CC Viewer / KVM Viewer / SN Viewer

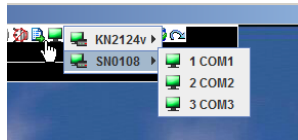
Clicking CC/KVM/SN Viewer from the drop-down menu opens viewer sessions directly to the ports of the selected device. The session opens a window with that device's port(s) on your desktop.

Controlling the viewers is the same as controlling the viewers opened from the KVM/SN devices.

For example, on an aggregate device that contains ports from a KN2124v KVM switch and an SN0108 serial device. When opening the CC Viewer, the first port of the KN2124v's in the aggregate device is displayed:



To switch ports in the viewer, open the hidden Control Panel (by hovering over the top center of the viewer window), and select the *Port List* icon. The port list choices include all the ports belonging to the device.



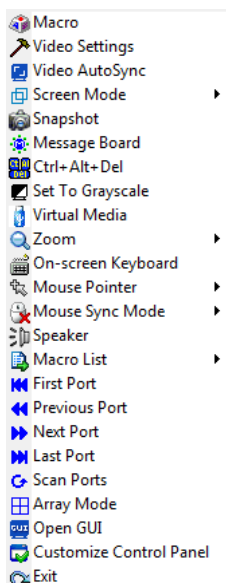
- In the list, select the device the port belongs to and click the port you want to access.
- The device or port name (port ID) displays in the CC Viewer title bar.
- The viewer window of each port has a hidden Control Panel. To switch to a different port on the device, bring up the port list and click the desired port.
- If the target device is associated with a PDU, additional power controls appear in the CC Viewer Control Panel.
- When you have finished with your session, open the Control Panel and select the *Exit* icon.

■ CC/KVM Viewer

The Control Panel of the CC/KVM viewer is hidden in the upper (default) or lower center of the screen, and becomes visible when you mouse over it. The panel consists of three rows: an icon row at the top, and two text rows below it:

















- ♦ You can right-click your mouse in the text row area to bring up a menu-style version of the toolbar.












Control Panel Functions

The Control Panel functions are described in the table below.

| Icon | Function |
|------|---|
| | This is a toggle. Click to make the Control Panel persistent – i.e., it always displays on top of other screen elements. Click again to have it display normally. |
| | Click to bring up the Macros dialog box (See the KVM device manual for more information). |
| | Click to bring up the Video Options dialog box. Right-click to perform a quick Auto Sync (See the KVM device manual for more information). |
| | Click to perform a video and mouse autosync operation. It is the same as clicking the Auto Sync button in the <i>Video Options</i> dialog box (See the KVM device manual for more information). |

| | |
|---|--|
|  | Toggles the display between <i>Full Screen Mode</i> and <i>Windowed Mode</i> . |
|  | Click to take a snapshot (screen capture) of the remote display (See the KVM device manual for more information). |
|  | Click to bring up the Message Board (See the KVM device manual for more information). |
|  | Click to send a Ctrl+Alt+Del signal to the remote system. |
|  | Click to toggle the remote display between color and grayscale views. |
|  | Click to bring up the <i>Virtual Media</i> dialog box. The icon changes depending on the status of the virtual media function (See the KVM device manual for more information). |
|  | Click to zoom the remote display window. |
|  | Click to bring up the on-screen keyboard (See the KVM device manual for more information). |
|  | Click to select the mouse pointer type. |
|  | Click to toggle Automatic or Manual mouse sync. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ When the selection is <i>Automatic</i>, a green √ appears on the icon. ♦ When the selection is <i>Manual</i>, a red X appears on the icon. See the KVM device manual for more information. |
|  | Click to toggle sound from the remote server to be heard on the client computer's speakers on or off. The "prohibited" symbol (a red circle with a diagonal bar) displays on the icon when the speaker is toggled Off. |
|  | Click to display a drop-down list of <i>User</i> macros in order to access and run macros more conveniently than using the Macros dialog box (See the KVM device manual for more information). |
|  | The Extended Displays icon allows you to select monitors to view in an extended display setup (See the KVM device manual for more information). |
|  | Under an accessed port, click to skip to the first port accessible to the user on the entire installation without having to recall the Port Access page. |

| | |
|---|---|
|  | Under an accessed port, click to skip to the first port accessible to the user that is previous to the current one without having to recall the Port Access page. |
|  | Under an accessed port, click to skip to the first port accessible to the user that is after the current one without having to recall the Port Access page. |
|  | Under an accessed port, click to skip to the last port accessible to the user on the entire installation without having to recall the Port Access page. |
|  | Under an accessed port, click to begin Auto Scan Mode. The KVM over IP switch automatically switches among the ports that were selected for Auto Scanning with the <i>Filter</i> function (See the KVM device manual for more information). This allows you to monitor their activity without having to switch among them manually. |
|  | Under an accessed port, click to invoke Panel Array Mode. |
|  | Under an accessed port, click to recall the GUI. |
|  | Click to bring up the Control Panel Configuration dialog box (See the KVM device manual for more information). |
|  | Click to exit the viewer. |
|  | <p>These icons show the Num Lock, Caps Lock, and Scroll Lock status of the remote computer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ When the lock state is <i>On</i>, the LED is bright green and the lock hasp is closed. ◆ When the lock state is <i>Off</i>, the LED is dull green and the lock hasp is open. <p>Click on the icon to toggle the status.</p> <p>Note: These icons and your local keyboard icons are in sync. Clicking an icon causes the corresponding LED on your keyboard to change accordingly. Likewise, pressing a Lock key on your keyboard causes the icon's color to change accordingly.</p> |








■ SNViewer









The SNViewer provides a Control Panel that is hidden at the upper center of the screen, and becomes visible when your mouse moves over it. The panel consists of three rows: an icon row at the top, and two text rows below it:



Control Panel Functions

The Control Panel functions are described below and in the following sections:

| Icon | Function |
|---|---|
|  | This is a toggle. Click to make the Control Panel appear <i>Always On Top</i> – i.e., always displays on top of the SNViewer screen. Click again to have it display in <i>Auto Hide</i> mode— allowing it to only appear when the mouse is moved over it. |
|  | Use this to copy the selected text on the screen. |
|  | Use this to copy all text that is displayed on the screen. |
|  | Use this to paste the copied text. |
|  | Use this icon to toggle <i>Logging on / Logging off</i> . This starts a log file of characters sent from the serial device to the SNViewer. You must first create and import a text based log file (See the SN device manual for more information). |
|  | Use this to browse for data files to import (See the SN device manual for more information). |
|  | Use this to change the page encoding (See the SN device manual for more information). |

| Icon | Function |
|---|--|
|  | <p>Use this icon to enable broadcasting. Broadcasting allows you to access and make changes on a single port and the same changes will be made across all Broadcast Ports. Before using the broadcast function, set the <i>Broadcast Timeout</i> and <i>Broadcast Ports</i> (See the SN device manual for more information).</p> <p>For broadcasting to work, you must first access a port set as a Broadcast Port and then click the Broadcast icon on the control panel.</p> |
|  | <p>Click to send a Break command.</p> |
|  | <p>Use this to reset the terminal to its default settings.</p> |
|  | <p>Click to bring up the Message Board (See the SN device manual for more information).</p> |
|  | <p>Click to open a window and create a list of custom text macros (See the SN device manual for more information).</p> |
|  | <p>Use this to change the font, color and other SNViewer settings (See the SN device manual for more information).</p> |
|  | <p>Use this button to adjust the width of the SNViewer window.</p> |
|  | <p>Click to exit the viewer.</p> |

Web Access

Clicking Web Access opens a browser session for the device on your desktop just as if you had opened your browser and logged into from the URL bar:



Power ON / OFF

- For Aggregate and Power devices you can choose All ON or All OFF to turn all the outlets belonging to that device on or off.
- For Power outlets, you can choose ON or OFF. If the port's status is ON, the choice is OFF – click OFF to turn the power to the outlet off.

Note: The change doesn't show in the table until you leave the page and come back to it.

SSH / Telnet Session

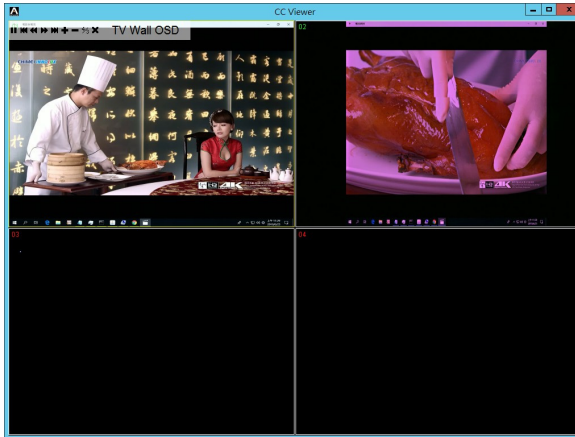
Choose to open an SSH or Telnet session to the selected port. You get an SSH or Telnet viewer window just as if you had logged into the serial device (SN0108, for example), with your browser and had chosen *Telnet* on the Main Web page.

Panel Array Mode

After you create a group device, you can launch panel array mode of the device by clicking the *CC Viewer* button (Operation column) and click the Start Panel Array icon in the control panel.



An example of the array display is shown below:



Use the icons hovering over the CC Viewer to adjust the panel array view settings.

A quick video reference is available in the link below:

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tbaQWK1vh60>

SPM Session

Clicking **SPM** in the operations drop-down menu will bring up a window with 3 tabs: **System Information**, **Monitoring Information** and **Event Logs**.

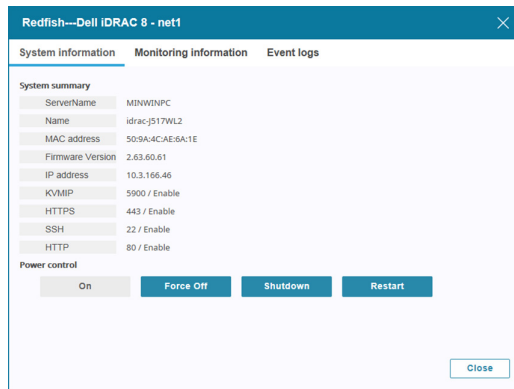
Note: The displayed information and options are different between the two supported Redfish-enabled Devices (HP iLO 5 and Dell iDRAC 8).

■ System Information

This tab displays the system information of the server.

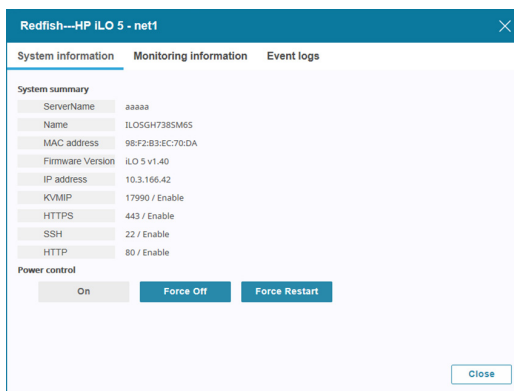
◆ Dell iDRAC 8 Example

You can also turn the server **On**, **Shutdown**, **Force Off** and **Restart** here.



◆ HP iLO 5 Example

You can also turn the server **On**, **Force Off** and **Force Restart** here.



■ Monitoring Information

The information and the details being presented are different for the two supported Redfish-enabled devices.

♦ Dell iDRAC 8 Example

Redfish---Dell iDRAC 8 - net1

System informationMonitoring informationEvent logs

Fans

| Fan | Location | Status | Speed |
|--------------------|-------------|--------|---------|
| System Board Fan1A | SystemBoard | OK | 1680RPM |
| System Board Fan2A | SystemBoard | OK | 1680RPM |
| System Board Fan3A | SystemBoard | OK | 1680RPM |
| System Board Fan4A | SystemBoard | OK | 1680RPM |
| System Board Fan5A | SystemBoard | OK | 1680RPM |
| System Board Fan6A | SystemBoard | OK | 1680RPM |
| System Board Fan7A | SystemBoard | OK | 1680RPM |
| System Board Fan1B | SystemBoard | OK | 1560RPM |
| System Board Fan2B | SystemBoard | OK | 1560RPM |
| System Board Fan3B | SystemBoard | OK | 1560RPM |
| System Board Fan4B | SystemBoard | OK | 1560RPM |
| System Board Fan5B | SystemBoard | OK | 1560RPM |
| System Board Fan6B | SystemBoard | OK | 1560RPM |
| System Board Fan7B | SystemBoard | OK | 1560RPM |

Close

♦ HP iLO 5 Example

Redfish---HP iLO 5 - net1

System informationMonitoring informationEvent logs

Fans

| Fan | Location | Status | Speed |
|-------|----------|--------|-------|
| Fan 3 | System | OK | 13% |
| Fan 4 | System | OK | 13% |
| Fan 5 | System | OK | 13% |
| Fan 6 | System | OK | 13% |

Temperatures

| Temperature | Location | Status | Reading (C/F) | Caution Threshold(C/F) | Critical Threshold (C/F) |
|------------------|-------------|--------|---------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 01-Inlet Ambient | Intake | OK | 24/75 | 42/107 | 47/115 |
| 02-CPU 1 | CPU | OK | 40/104 | 70/158 | N/A |
| 04-P1 DIMM 1-6 | SystemBoard | OK | 25/77 | 90/194 | N/A |
| 06-P1 DIMM 7-12 | SystemBoard | OK | 26/78 | 90/194 | N/A |

Close

■ Event Logs

◆ Dell iDRAC 8 Example

Redfish—Dell iDRAC 8 - net1

System informationMonitoring informationEvent logs

Select an event log categoryDRAC Log

DisplayLast 20 records

| No. | Severity | Source | Date/Time | Description |
|-----|----------|--------|---------------------------|---|
| 1 | OK | OEM | 2019-09-26 07:05:56+08:00 | Successfully logged in using kobby, from 10.0.90.180 and REDFISH. |
| 2 | OK | OEM | 2019-09-26 07:05:55+08:00 | The session for kobby from 10.0.90.180 using REDFISH is logged off. |
| 3 | OK | OEM | 2019-09-26 07:05:54+08:00 | Successfully logged in using kobby, from 10.0.90.180 and REDFISH. |
| 4 | OK | OEM | 2019-09-26 07:05:27+08:00 | The session for kobby from 10.0.90.180 using REDFISH is logged off. |
| 5 | OK | OEM | 2019-09-26 07:05:22+08:00 | Successfully logged in using kobby, from 10.0.90.180 and REDFISH. |
| 6 | OK | OEM | 2019-09-26 07:05:21+08:00 | The session for kobby from 10.0.90.180 using REDFISH is logged off. |
| 7 | OK | OEM | 2019-09-26 07:05:19+08:00 | Successfully logged in using kobby, from 10.0.90.180 and REDFISH. |

Close

◆ HP iLO 5 Example

Redfish—HP iLO 5 - net1

System informationMonitoring informationEvent logs

Select an event log categorySystem Event Log

DisplayLast 20 records

| No. | Severity | Source | Date/Time | Description |
|-----|----------|--------|---------------------------|--|
| 1 | OK | OEM | 2019-09-26 05:54:48+00:00 | SSH logout: aten1220 - 10.0.92.88(DNS name not found). |
| 2 | OK | OEM | 2019-09-26 05:54:39+00:00 | Browser logout: aten1220 - 10.0.92.88(DNS name not found). |
| 3 | OK | OEM | 2019-09-26 05:54:34+00:00 | Browser login: aten1220 - 10.0.92.88(DNS name not found). |
| 4 | OK | OEM | 2019-09-26 05:54:08+00:00 | SSH login: aten1220 - 10.0.92.88(DNS name not found). |
| 5 | OK | OEM | 2019-09-26 05:53:28+00:00 | SSH login: aten1220 - 10.0.92.88(DNS name not found). |
| 6 | OK | OEM | 2019-09-26 05:53:02+00:00 | Browser login: Administrator - 10.0.90.180(DNS name not found). |
| 7 | OK | OEM | 2019-09-26 05:53:04+00:00 | Browser logout: Administrator - 10.0.90.180(DNS name not found). |

Close

Ports

Ports and the configurations are displayed in the lower screen of the Device submenu. All the operations are the same as the device (upper screen), except that configurations are at the port level, and that it includes a **Launch Viewer** option.

Launch Viewer

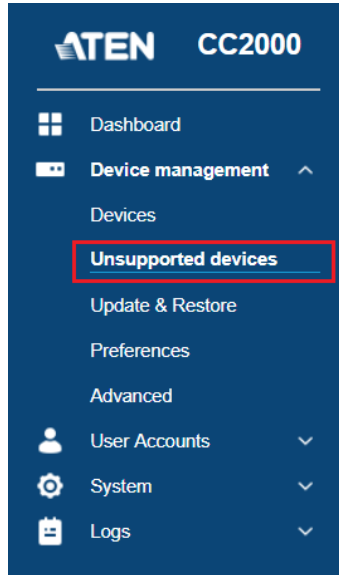
If you want to launch viewers to see the screen of the port, check the port and click **Launch Viewer**. The system will open the viewer in a new window (java or winclient).

Refer to *Operation* on page 100 for more information.

Unsupported Devices

Unsupported devices are ATEN/Altusen devices whose firmware level is not compatible with the CC2000's current firmware level.

When unsupported devices appear in the system, the submenu will appear in the sidebar menu as shown below:



The interactive display panel will list the unsupported devices. An example is as shown:

| Unsupported devices | | | | | | |
|---|---------|-------------|---------------|---------------------------|-------------|--|
| Upgrade Firmware | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Name | Model | IP | Firmware Ver. | Firmware Ver. in Database | Description | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 155-Sim-KN4140v-011074FF01A5 | KN4140v | 10.0.90.180 | V1.7.165 | 1.5.175 | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 156-Sim-KN4140v-011074FF01A6 | KN4140v | 10.0.90.180 | V1.7.165 | 1.5.175 | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 167-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF01A7 | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 1.7.165 | 1.5.175 | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 168-Sim-KN4124v-011074FF01A8 | KN4124v | 10.0.90.180 | 1.7.165 | 1.5.175 | | |

To make these devices available for management under the CC2000, their firmware must be upgraded to the latest version. To do this, do the following:

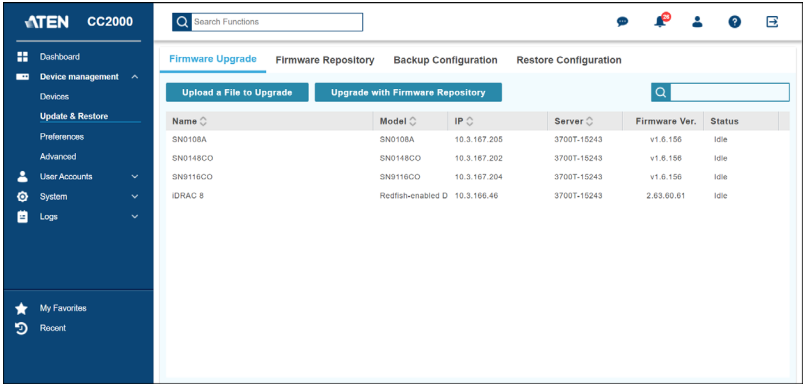
1. Add the device's firmware upgrade file to the CC2000. See *Firmware Repository* on page 119 on how to do this.
2. Once the device's firmware upgrade file is stored on the CC2000, its checkbox on this page becomes active. Check the checkbox.

3. Click **Firmware Upgrade**.
4. A confirmation message will pop up, click **Yes** to upgrade the device's firmware.

Once the firmware upgrade completes, the device is removed and will now appear in the upper screen of the Devices submenu.

Update & Restore

This submenu allows you to manage firmware and backup files.



The table here shows the ATEN and Redfish-enabled devices that have recently firmware upgraded.

The status column shows the firmware upgrade status of the device:

| Status | Description |
|-----------|--|
| Idle | This status will show if you restart CC2000 when the device does not have any firmware upgrade lined up. |
| Waiting | The device is waiting for firmware upgrade. |
| Uploading | Uploading firmware upgrade file to the device. |
| Upgrading | Upgrading device. |
| Succeeded | Firmware upgrade/upload has just completed successfully. |
| Failed | Firmware upgrade/upload has just failed. |

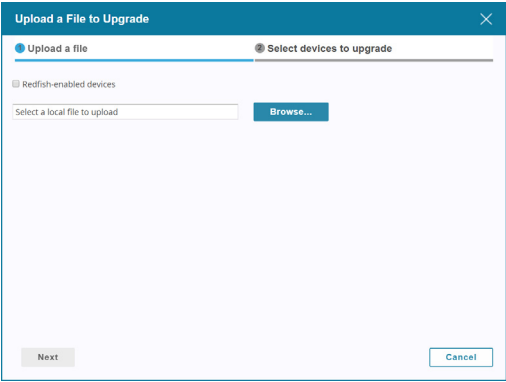
Firmware Upgrade

In this tab, you can choose one of the two ways to upgrade the devices.

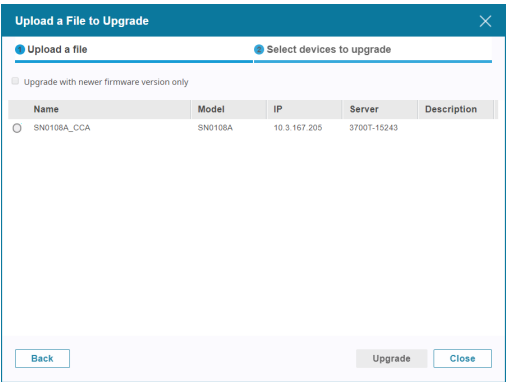
Upload a File to Upgrade

One of the ways to upgrade a device is **Upload a File to Upgrade**. Follow the steps below to upgrade this way:

1. Identify which device you need to upgrade and download its firmware from the ATEN website.
2. Click **Upload a File to Upgrade**, a window will pop up.



3. Click **Browse**, find the firmware file in your system and click **Next**.



4. Select the device you wish to upgrade and click **Upgrade**.

5. A confirmation message will pop up, click **Yes** to upgrade the device's firmware.

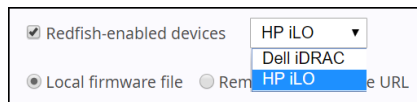
Upgrade Redfish-enabled Device

If you have a Redfish-enabled device, upgrade it using **Upload a File to Upgrade**. Follow the steps below to upgrade this way:

1. Identify which Redfish-enabled device you need to upgrade and download its firmware from the ATEN website.
2. Click **Upload a File to Upgrade**, a window will pop up.



3. Check Redfish-enabled devices. A drop-down menu will appear to allow you to select the type of Redfish-enabled device.



4. Select the Redfish device type, click **Browse** to select the firmware file and click **Next**.
5. The devices belonging to this Redfish device type will appear in the list. Check the device(s) you wish to upgrade and click **Upgrade**.

While upgrading, the status column of the device(s) currently upgrading will show “Upgrading...” and the device(s) waiting will show “Waiting...”

| Firmware Upgrade | | | | | | |
|--------------------------|---------|----------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|--------------|--|
| Firmware Repository | | Backup Configuration | | Restore Configuration | | |
| Upload a File to Upgrade | | Upgrade with Firmware Repository | | | Q | |
| Name | Model | IP | Server | Firmware Ver. | Status | |
| HPE DL380 G10-1 | Redfish | 192.168.1.4 | WIN2012-ABCDE | 10.8.0(A) | Upgrading... | |
| HPE DL380 G10-2 | Redfish | 192.168.1.5 | WIN2012-ABCDE | 10.9.0 | Waiting... | |

Upgrade with Firmware Repository

One of the ways to upgrade a device is **Upgrade with Firmware Repository**. Follow the steps below to upgrade this way:

- 1. Identify which device you need to upgrade and make sure the upgrade file is in the firmware repository. Refer to *Firmware Repository* on page 119 on how to upload firmware into firmware repository.
- 2. Click **Upgrade with Firmware Repository**, a window will pop up.

Upgrade with Firmware Repository

Select a firmware file

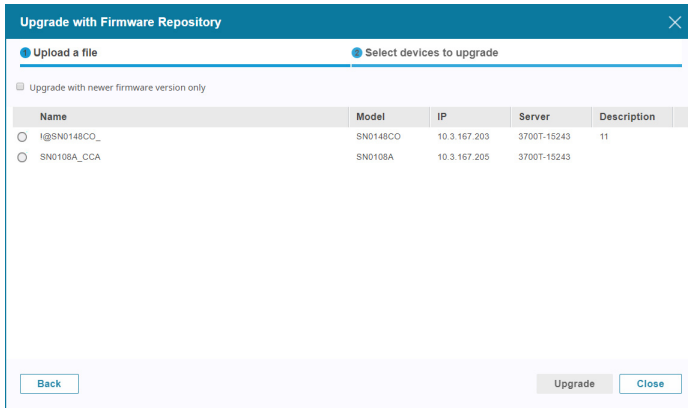
Select devices to upgrade

| Appliance Type | Firmware Ver. | Date | Firmware Type | Description |
|---|---------------|------------|---------------|-------------|
| <input type="radio"/> KN8164 | V2.0.195 | 2019-04-25 | Application | 100 |
| <input type="radio"/> SN0132/ SN0148/ SN0108A/ SN0116A/ SN9108/ S | V1.6.153 | 2019-03-19 | Application | 00 |
| <input type="radio"/> SN0132/ SN0148/ SN0108A/ SN0116A/ SN9108/ S | V1.6.152 | 2018-11-21 | Application | 123 |

Next

Cancel

- 3. Select one of the firmware files and click **Next**.



4. Select the device you wish to upgrade and click **Upgrade**.
5. A confirmation message will pop up, click **Yes** to upgrade the device's firmware.

Firmware Repository

The Firmware Repository tab is shown below:

| Firmware Upgrade Firmware Repository Backup Configuration Restore Configuration | | | | | |
|---|---------------|----------------------|---------------|-------------|--|
| Add Delete | | <input type="text"/> | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Appliance Type | Firmware Ver. | Date | Firmware Type | Description | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> KN0164 | V2.0.195 | 2019-04-25 | Application | kn | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> SN0132/ SN0148/ SN0108A/ SN0116A/ SN0108/ SN0116/ SN0108CO, SN0116CO, SN0132CO, SN0148CO, SN0108CO, SN01 | V1.6.153 | 2019-03-19 | Application | 00 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> SN0132/ SN0148/ SN0108A/ SN0116A/ SN0108/ SN0116/ SN0108CO, SN0116CO, SN0132CO, SN0148CO, SN0108CO, SN01 | V1.6.152 | 2019-11-21 | Application | 123 | |

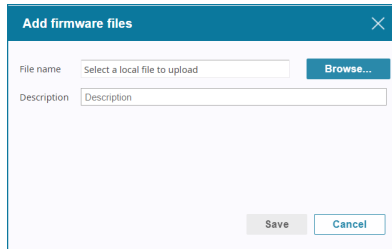
This page lists all the firmware upgrade files stored on the CC2000 – showing you at a glance the specific information about each of them.

By making the latest firmware upgrade files available for distribution from this single location, you can easily perform upgrades from within the CC2000, and ensure that all the devices on your installation are operating at the same and most up-to-date firmware level.

- Note:** 1. Firmware upgrades can be also be performed under the Task Manager submenu. See page 185 for details.
2. New firmware upgrade packages are posted on our website as they become available. Check the website regularly to find the latest packages and information relating to them.
-

Adding Firmware Files

1. To add a firmware file to the list, click **Add**, a window will pop up:



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add firmware files" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Inside the dialog, there are two input fields. The first is labeled "File name" and has a placeholder text "Select a local file to upload" next to it, with a "Browse..." button to its right. The second is labeled "Description" and has a placeholder text "Description". At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel".

2. Click **Browse** to select the firmware file.
3. Enter a description and click **Save**.

Note: If the firmware file isn't a CC2000 compliant one (even though it is compliant for the device in a stand-alone configuration), the CC2000 will not let you load it.

Deleting Firmware Files

To remove a firmware file(s) from the list, check the file(s) and click **Delete**. A confirmation message will pop up, click **Yes** to delete the firmware file(s).

Backup Configuration

This tab will show the devices currently added to CC2000 and their information in the table.

| Firmware Upgrade Firmware Repository <u>Backup Configuration</u> Restore Configuration | | | | | |
|--|----------|--------------|-------------|-------------|--|
| Backup Search device name | | | | | |
| Name | Model | IP | Server | Description | |
| <input type="radio"/> SN014BCD | SN014BCD | 10.3.167.203 | 3700T-15243 | 11 | |
| <input type="radio"/> KN8164V_BRC | KN8164V | 10.3.166.252 | 3700T-15243 | | |
| <input type="radio"/> SN0108A_CCA | SN0108A | 10.3.167.205 | 3700T-15243 | | |

To backup a device's configuration, select the device and click **Backup**.

The system will ask if you would like to enter a password for encryption purpose.

Password for encryption

Click **OK** to backup the configuration.

This article is published under the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License. For more information, see <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/>.
 The Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License allows users to share and adapt the work, provided the original author and source are credited.

| Restore Configuration | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------|--------------|-------------|----------------------|--|
| Restore | | Delete | | <input type="text"/> | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Name | Model | IP | Server | Date | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> SN0148CO | SN0148CO | 10.3.167.203 | 3700T-15243 | 2019-05-27 13:23:06 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> SN0148CO | SN0148CO | 10.3.167.203 | 3700T-15243 | 2019-05-15 16:47:10 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> SN0108A_CCA | SN0108A | 10.3.167.205 | 3700T-15243 | 2019-05-15 16:44:30 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> SN0116CO_OC | SN0116CO | | | 2019-05-15 16:47:20 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> SN0116CO_OC | SN0116CO | | | 2019-05-15 16:47:36 | |

- _____

Restore Configuration

✕

Password for decryption

☐ Select all

☐ OOBC

☐ Account

☐ Port configuration

☐ Network

☐ Device configuration

☐ Security

☐ ANMS

☐ Date/Time

Restore options

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Name | Model | IP | MAC | Server | Description |
|--------------------------|-------------|---------|--------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | SN0108A_CCA | SN0108A | 10.3.167.205 | 00107448004e | 3700T-15243 | |

Restore

Cancel

4. Select the device you wish to restore by checking the device(s) you wish to restore.
5. Click **Restore**. A confirmation message will pop up, click **Yes** to restore.

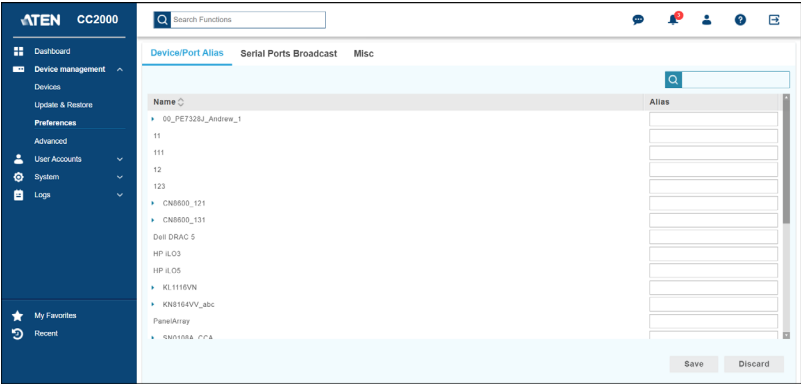
Delete

To remove a configuration file(s) from the list, check the file(s) and click **Delete**.

A confirmation message will pop up, click **Yes** to delete the configuration file(s).

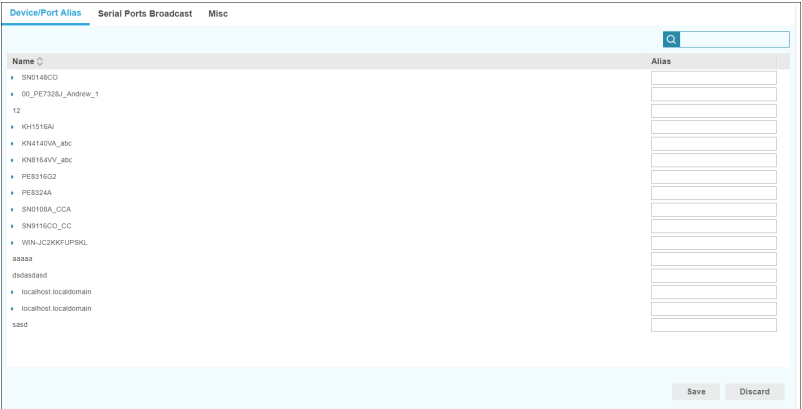
Preferences

This submenu allows you to configure user preferences in different tabs.

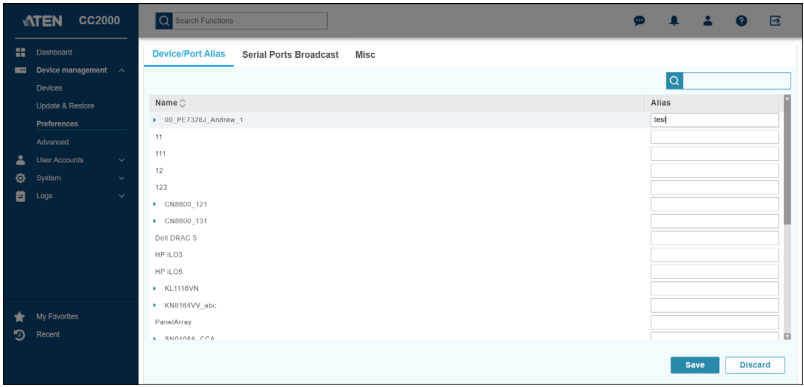


Device/Port Alias

This tab allows you to give your devices, ports, and outlets a nickname (as alias) that may help you identify these items.



- The default view only shows devices. To give an alias to a port or outlet, click the arrowhead in front of the device’s name to show them.
- Key the alias into the *Alias* field that corresponds to the device, port, or outlet and click **Save**.



Note: Aliases only appear for the particular user that creates them. Other users will only see the original name (or any aliases that they have created).

Serial Ports Broadcast

This tab allows you to select ports on a serial device to receive broadcast commands. Selecting multiple Broadcast Ports allows you to access and make changes on a single serial port and the same change will be made across all Broadcast Ports.

Device/Port AliasSerial Ports BroadcastMisc

Broadcast timeout120seconds

| Device/Port Name | Port | Broadcast Ports |
|------------------|------|--|
| SN0116CO_CC | | <input type="checkbox"/> Broadcast among all ports |
| COM1 | 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| COM2 | 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| COM3 | 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| COM4 | 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| COM5 | 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| COM6 | 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| COM7 | 7 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| COM8 | 8 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| COM9 | 9 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| COM10 | 10 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| COM11 | 11 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| COM12 | 12 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| COM13 | 13 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| COM14 | 14 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| COM15 | 15 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| COM16 | 16 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| SN0108A_CCA | | <input type="checkbox"/> Broadcast among all ports |

Save

Discard

For broadcasting to work, you must access a Broadcast Port using the SNViewer and turn Broadcast on from the Control Panel. Refer to the SN user manual (under *Control Panel Functions*) for details.

Broadcast timeout: If there is no user input for the amount of time set here, the Broadcast function (to other ports) is automatically ended. Key in a value from 0–240 seconds. A setting of 0 (zero) has the same effect as disabling the function.

You can check **Broadcast Ports** on the last column of the table to check all serial ports in the table.

You can check **Broadcast among all ports** for a particular device to check all of its serial ports.

Expand the serial device to see all serial ports by clicking the arrowhead in front of the device. You can check individual port for broadcasting.

Note: The CC2000 will only list serial devices which are connected to a switch that supports broadcast ports.

Misc

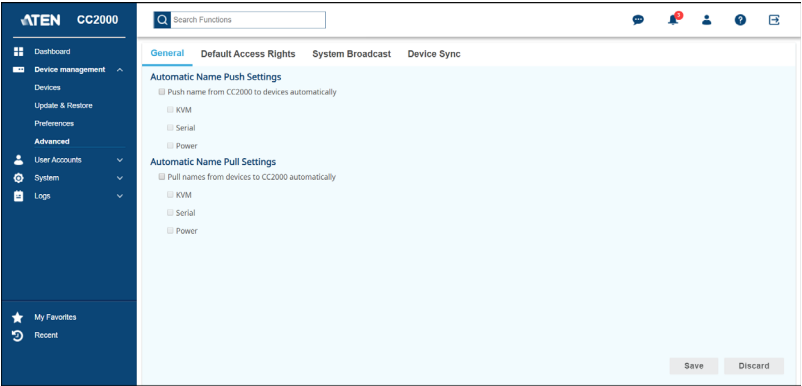
This tab allows you to set viewer client settings.

The screenshot shows the 'Misc' tab of a configuration window. At the top, there are three tabs: 'Device/Port Alias', 'Serial Ports Broadcast', and 'Misc', with 'Misc' being the active tab. Below the tabs, the section is titled 'Viewer client settings'. It contains three options: 'Auto-detect system' (selected with a radio button), 'Always use java' (unselected with a radio button), and 'Use Win32 PuTTY Telnet/SSH client for serial port operation' (unselected with a checkbox). Below these options is a 'Scan duration' field with a text input containing the number '5' and a label 'seconds'. At the bottom right of the window are two buttons: 'Save' and 'Discard'.

- ♦ If you choose **Auto-detect system**, the CC2000 will check to see if you logged in with IE or with another browser. If you logged in with IE, it will open the Windows Client Viewer when you access a device or port. If you logged in with a browser other than IE, it will open the Java Client Viewer.
- ♦ If you choose **Always use java**, the CC2000 will open the Java Client Viewer no matter which browser you logged in with.
- ♦ Checking the option **Use Win32 PuTTY Telnet/SSH client for single port operation** will open the PuTTY Telnet/SSH client software when connecting to a serial device via CC2000 with IE.
- ♦ **Scan Duration** sets the interval time for scanning ports when viewing ports in panel array mode.

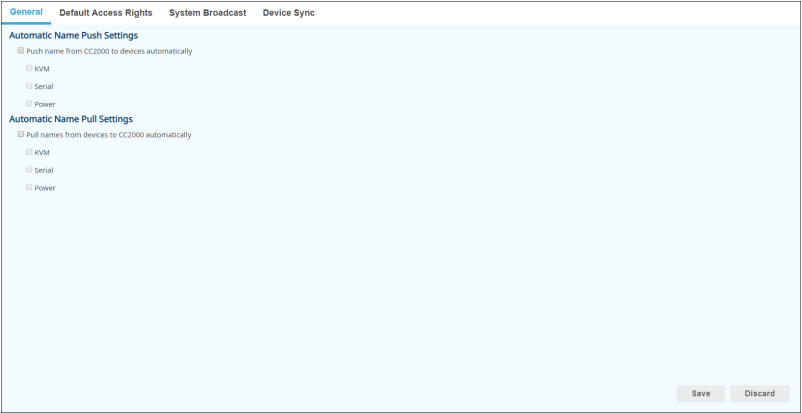
Advanced

The advanced submenu includes many tabs for advanced configurations.



General

The General tab is as shown below:



This page lets you configure automatic syncing of names between the CC2000 and the installed devices. Check the boxes for the features you want to enable, then click **Save**.

Default Access Rights

The Default Access Rights tab is as shown below:

The screenshot shows the 'Default Access Rights' tab in a web interface. It has four sub-tabs: 'General', 'Default Access Rights' (selected), 'System Broadcast', and 'Device Sync'. The 'Default Access Rights' section contains several configuration options, each with a radio button for 'Allowed' and 'Denied'. The options are: 'Configuration' (Allowed/Denied), 'Web Direct Connection' (Allowed/Denied), 'Power Outlet Access' (Allowed/Denied), 'Serial Port Access' (Allowed/Denied), and 'KVM port access' (Allowed/Denied). The 'Allowed' radio button is selected for all options. At the bottom right, there are 'Save' and 'Discard' buttons.

This page allows you to set the default access rights for all new devices added to the CC2000 installation.

System Broadcast

The System Broadcast tab is as shown below:

The screenshot shows the 'System Broadcast' tab in a web interface. It has four sub-tabs: 'General', 'Default Access Rights', 'System Broadcast' (selected), and 'Device Sync'. The 'System Broadcast' section contains a 'Broadcast IP address and port number to the devices' dropdown menu, a 'Broadcast IP address and port number to the devices' text input field, and a 'Broadcast IP address' text input field. Below the input fields, there is a note: 'Use a comma to separate multiple addresses. For a range of addresses, put a dash between the start address and the end address (e.g. 192.168.0.1-192.168.0.200)'. At the bottom right, there is a 'Broadcast Now' button.

Broadcast IP address and port number to the devices

Before a device can communicate with the CC2000, its ANMS settings have to specify the CC2000's IP address and device management port number.

Selecting this option from the top drop-down menu allows the CC2000 to broadcast its IP address and device management port number to the devices connected to it on its network, which automatically sets them on the devices (instead of having to set them manually on the device itself). This is done the first time that you connect a device to the CC2000 network, or if a device has been reset to its default settings.

-
- Note:** 1. This function uses UDP to broadcast the information. Therefore the devices must be on the same network segment (VPN will not work). UDP uses port 18768 – make sure that the network settings for computers that the CC2000 is installed on have this port open.
2. For heightened security, once the broadcast is done and the information has been sent to the device, the device will not accept UDP broadcasts from any other CC2000.
3. If you change CC2000s, you must use the ANMS settings page to specify the IP Address and port number.
-

On the next drop-down menu, select **All Devices** or **Specific IP Address**. If you choose **Specific IP Address**, enter the IP address in the next field.

Click **Broadcast Now** to start broadcasting.

Broadcast changed IP address and port number to the devices

This feature is used when the CC2000's IP address and/or device management port number changes.

Selecting this option from the top drop-down menu allows the CC2000 to broadcast its new IP address and/or device management port number to the devices connected to it on its network – automatically updating their ANMS settings accordingly.

-
- Note:** 1. This function uses UDP to broadcast the information. Therefore the devices must be on the same network segment (VPN will not work)
2. For heightened security, the receiving devices will only accept UDP broadcasts from the CC2000 that originally initialized them.
-

On the next drop-down menu, select **All Devices** or **Specific IP Address**. If you choose **Specific IP Address**, enter the IP address in the next field.

Click **Broadcast Now** to start broadcasting.

Device Sync

The Device Sync tab is as shown below:

GeneralDefault Access RightsSystem BroadcastDevice Sync

Manually name sync: Sync names from CC2000 to devices

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Name | Model | IP | MAC | Server | Sync Results |
|--------------------------|--------------|----------|--------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | SN014BCD | SN014BCD | 10.3.167.203 | 001074480002 | 3700T-15243 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | KN8164VV_3BC | KN8164V | 10.3.166.252 | 001074610891 | 3700T-15243 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | SN0106A_CCA | SN0106A | 10.3.167.205 | 00107448004e | 3700T-15243 | |

Sync Now

For device name changes, use this tab to manually sync the names between the devices and the CC2000.

Select **Sync names from CC2000 to devices** or **Sync names from devices to CC2000**.

Select the device(s) you wish to sync with by checking the checkbox(es).

Click **Sync Now**.

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

Chapter 6

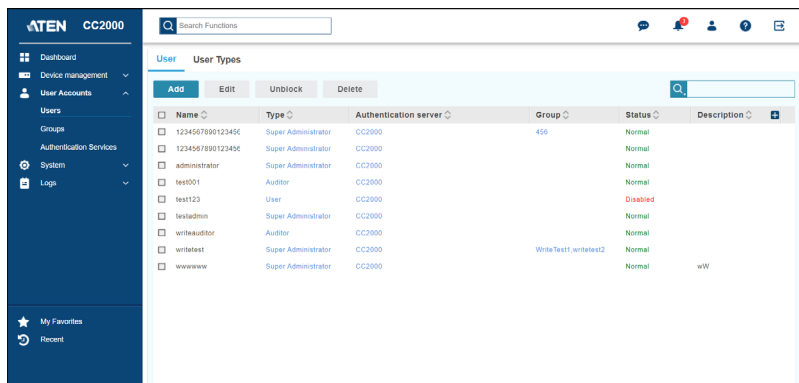
User Accounts

Overview

The *User Management* page is used to perform the following functions:

- ◆ Add, modify and delete user accounts
- ◆ Create user groups and assign users to them
- ◆ Specify device access rights for users and groups based on system default or custom defined user types
- ◆ Specify whether the user's authentication will be performed via the CC2000 (internal) or via an external authentication server

Below is the displayed page when User Accounts is selected:



The screenshot shows the ATEN CC2000 User Management interface. The left sidebar contains navigation options: Dashboard, Device management, User Accounts (selected), Users, Groups, Authentication Services, System, and Logs. The main area displays a table of users with columns: Name, Type, Authentication server, Group, Status, and Description. The table lists several users, including Super Administrators, Auditors, and a User, with their respective authentication servers and statuses.

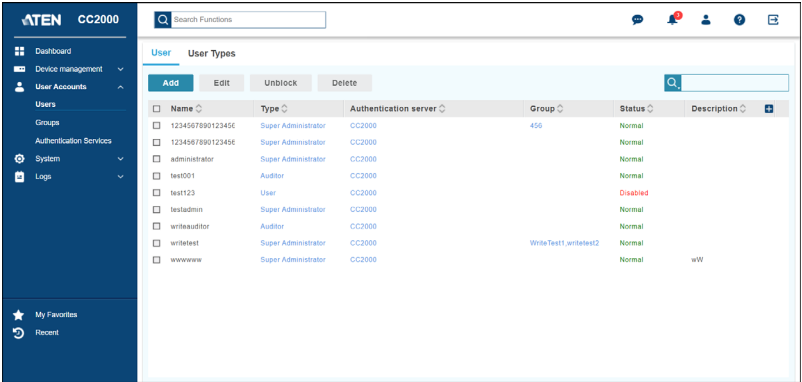
| Name | Type | Authentication server | Group | Status | Description |
|------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------|-------------|
| 1234567890123456 | Super Administrator | CC2000 | 456 | Normal | |
| 1234567890123456 | Super Administrator | CC2000 | | Normal | |
| administrator | Super Administrator | CC2000 | | Normal | |
| test001 | Auditor | CC2000 | | Normal | |
| test123 | User | CC2000 | | Disabled | |
| testadmin | Super Administrator | CC2000 | | Normal | |
| writetestauditor | Auditor | CC2000 | | Normal | |
| writetest | Super Administrator | CC2000 | WriteTest1_writeTest2 | Normal | |
| wwwwww | Super Administrator | CC2000 | | Normal | ww |

The submenus include Users, Groups and Authentication Services.

Note: The User Accounts page access is for Super Administrators, System Administrators, User Administrators and Auditors. Auditors can only view the items in this menu.

Users

The Users submenu looks similar to the one below:



User

Add User

Follow the steps below to add a user:

1. Click **Add** for the page below:

The 'Add' form is shown with the 'General' tab selected. It contains the following fields and options:

- Username:** A text input field.
- Password:** A text input field with a 'Very weak' strength indicator.
- Confirm password:** A text input field.
- Description:** A large text area.
- User type:** A dropdown menu with 'Super Administrator' selected.
- Authentication server:** A dropdown menu with 'CC2000' selected.
- Session timeout:** A dropdown menu with '3' selected, followed by the text 'minute(s)'.
- ☐ Disallow the user to change account password
- ☒ User must change password at next login
- ☒ Password never expires
- ☐ Disable this account
 - ☒ Immediately

At the bottom are 'Next' and 'Cancel' buttons.

2. Enter the required information in the appropriate fields. A description of each of the fields is given in the table below:

| Field | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Username | <p>Internal (CC2000) Accounts: A maximum of 32 English alphanumeric characters is allowed. The minimum number of characters is based on the CC2000's account policy settings (see <i>CC2000 Authentication</i>, page 154).</p> <p>External Authentication: The Login name should be one that exists on the external authentication server.</p> <p>Note: These external servers provide authentication services only – they do not provide authorization services. Authorization is provided through the CC2000 management system, therefore the access rights need to be set in the CC2000.</p> |
| Password / Confirm password | Enter a password of up to 32 alphanumeric characters and confirm the password. |
| Description | Additional information about the user that you may wish to include. A maximum of 256 Bytes is allowed. |
| User type | Click the drop-down menu to select the User Type you want to assign the new user to. See p. 139 for information about User Types. |
| Authentication server | <p>For authentication by the CC2000, leave the selection as is. For authentication by an external authentication service, drop down the list to select the one you wish to use.</p> <p>Note: Before you can make this selection, an external authentication server must first be added. See <i>Add Authentication Services</i>, page 149, for details.</p> |
| User base RDN | If the authentication server is an LDAP server, the user's base RDN setting must be in this field. |
| Session Timeout | <p>If you want to have a session time out after the user has been idle for a specified amount of time, select a time in the drop-down menu. The default is 3 mins.</p> <p>If you don't want to have a session time out after the user has been idle for a specified amount of time, select <i>Never</i> in the drop-down menu.</p> <p>Note: This setting pertains to Web log in sessions.</p> |
| Other Information | Check the checkbox(es) for the extra policies governing this account. |

3. Click **Next** for the personal information page.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It has two tabs: "General" (selected) and "Personal Information". The "General" tab contains several text input fields: "Full name", "Home address", "Business address", "Home phone", "Business phone", "Mobile phone", "Pager", "Primary email", "Additional email 1", and "Additional email 2". At the bottom of the dialog, there are three buttons: "Back", "Save", and "Cancel".

The information entered here is to help identify the user only.

4. Click **Save** to save the information. The system will bring you to the Add to Group page where you can add the user to a group(s).

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add to group (writetest)" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It features a search bar with a magnifying glass icon. Below the search bar is a table with two columns: "Name" and "Description". The table contains two rows of data: "writetest" and "writetest2", each with a checkbox to its left. At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: "Add" and "Close".

5. Check the group you wish the user to be added to and click **Add**.

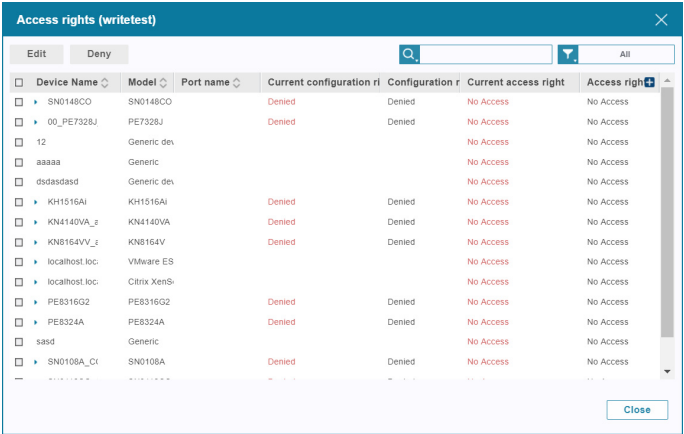
6. Click **Close** to complete the process.

Edit User

You can edit the Access Rights and the Properties of a user.

■ Edit Access Rights

- 1. Check the user and click **Edit**.
Alternatively, you can move your cursor over the user and click the pencil icon.
- 2. Click **Access rights** and a window will pop up. An example is shown:



- 3. Check a device or port and click **Edit**.
Alternatively, you can move your cursor over the device or port and click the pencil icon.
A window will pop up. An example is shown:



4. Refer to the information in *Access rights* on page 88 to help you edit the rights.

■ Edit Properties

1. Check the user and click **Edit**.

Alternatively, you can move your cursor over the user and click the pencil icon.

2. Click **Properties** and a window will pop up. An example is shown:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "User (writetest)" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog has three tabs: "General" (selected), "Personal Information", and "Group membership". The "General" tab contains the following fields and options:

- Username: writetest
- ☐ Set password: Password
- Confirm password: Confirm password
- Description: Description
- User type: Super Administrator (dropdown)
- Authentication server: CC2000 (dropdown)
- Session timeout: Never (dropdown) minute(s)
- ☐ Disallow the user to change account password
- ☐ User must change password at next login
- ☒ Password never expires
- ☐ Disable this account
 - ☒ Immediately

At the bottom right, there are "Save" and "Close" buttons.

3. Edit the options in this tab. You can change to a different tab by clicking it. Refer to *User* on page 134 for information about the three tabs shown here.

■ Unblock User

A user may be blocked out due to exceeding the number of login attempts.

To unblock a user(s), check to select the blocked user(s) and click **Unblock**.

A confirmation message will pop up, click **Yes** to unblock the user(s).

Note: 1. You can unblock more than one user by checking as many names as you require. You can check all accounts by checking the box at the top of the column.

2. If all users – including the System Administrator – gets blocked, the System Administrator can use the CC2000Pro Utility to restore his

account and then unblock the locked out users. See *Restore*, page 259.

Delete User

To delete a user(s), check to select the user(s) and click **Delete**.
A confirmation message will pop up, click **Yes** to delete the user(s).

User Types

Click the User Type tab to show a list of user types. An example is shown:

User

User Types

You can use the following predefined user types or create a custom one to assign it to a user for the access control of CC2000.

Add

Edit

Delete

| <input type="checkbox"/> Name | Category | Description |
|---|----------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Super Administrator | System | CC2000 system defined user type. User has default Super Administrator privileges. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> System Administrator | System | CC2000 system defined user type. User has default System Administrator privileges. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Device Administrator | System | CC2000 system defined user type. User has default Device Administrator privileges. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> User Administrator | System | CC2000 system defined user type. User has default User Administrator privileges. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> User | System | CC2000 system defined user type. User has default User privileges. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Auditor | System | CC2000 system defined user type. User has default Auditor privileges. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> WriteTest | Custom | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> WriteTest2 | Custom | User has all administrator privileges. |

There are System and Customer user types where the Category column helps you identify which is which.

The CC2000 supports six system user types and are predefined in the system. The roles assigned to members of these user types are fixed and cannot be changed.

The *Custom* user type category provides you with the convenience and flexibility of assigning various combinations of roles that best suit your installation's requirements.

System User Types

The roles performed by members of the System category are fixed. The roles associated with each type are summarized in the table below:

| Assigned Roles | Super Admin | System Admin | User Admin | Device Admin | User | Auditor |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|--------------|------------|--------------|------|---------|
| System Management | √ | √ | | | | ◇ |
| System tasks | √ | √ | | | | ◇ |
| Authentication services | √ | √ | √ | | | ◇ |
| User / Group management | √ | √ | √ | | | ◇ |
| User / Group device access rights | √ | √ | √ | | | ◇ |
| Device management | √ | √ | | √ | | ◇ |
| Log configuration and setting | √ | √ | √ | √ | | |
| View logs / reports | √ | √ | √ | √ | | ◇ |
| Users can change their own passwords | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ |

Note: 1. The differences between Super Administrators and System Administrators are as follows:

- ◆ Super Administrators are authorized for all roles automatically, and includes access to all devices, ports, and outlets. The roles are fixed and cannot be changed.
- ◆ You cannot change Super Administrators to different user types whereas System Administrators can be changed to different user types.

2. Auditor:

- ◆ Auditors can access all tabs and pages, but is restricted to *View Only* rights.
 - ◆ For **Logs**, Auditors can export and print logs in addition to viewing them, but cannot change any settings.
 - ◆ For **Preferences**, Auditors can change his/her *Web Options* and *Password*.
-

Custom User Types

You can create custom user types with any combination of roles assigned to them to suit your requirements.

■ Add User Type

Follow the steps below to create a custom user type:

1. Click **Add** for a pop-up window as shown:

2. Enter a name, description and check the roles you want the new user type to have.

Note: 1. The Name can be the equivalent of from 2–32 English alphanumeric characters, but cannot contain the following: " ' \

2. The Description can be up to 256 Bytes.

3. Click **Save** to complete.

■ Edit User Type

1. Check the user type you wish to edit and click **Edit**.
Alternatively, you can move your cursor over the user type and click the pencil icon.
2. Edit the name, description and check/uncheck the roles you want this user type to have.
3. Click **Save** to complete.

Delete User Type

Check the user type and click **Delete**.

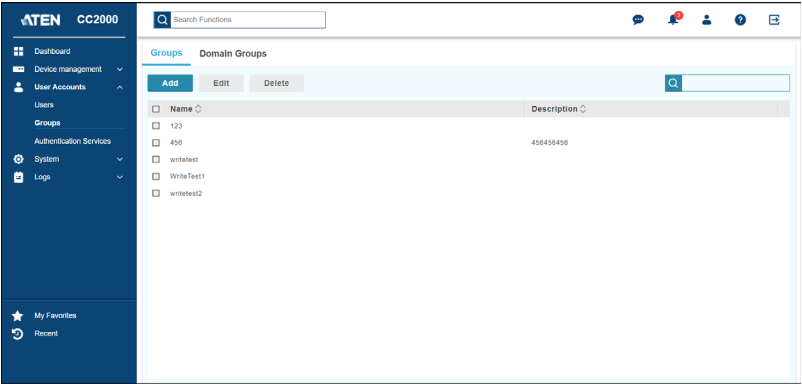
A confirmation message will pop up, click **Yes** to delete the user type(s).

Note: You can only delete non-system user types.

Groups

Groups allow administrators to easily and efficiently manage users and devices. Since device access rights apply to anyone who is a member of the group, administrators need only set them once for the group, instead of having to set them for each user individually. Multiple groups can be defined to allow some users access to specific devices while restricting other users from accessing them.

The Groups submenu looks similar to the one below:



Groups Tab

Add Group

1. Click **Add** and a window will pop up:

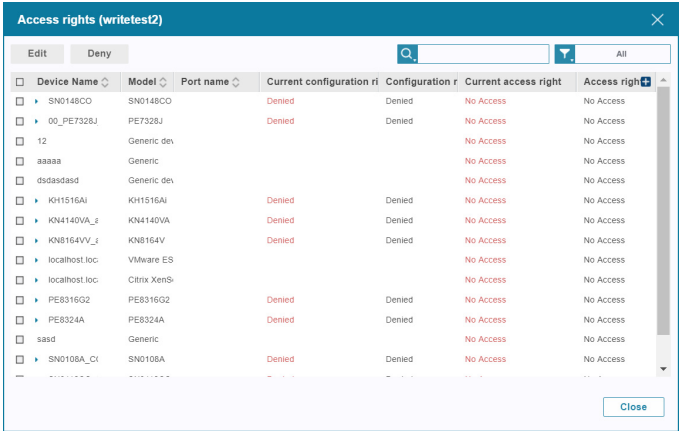
A screenshot of a modal dialog box titled 'Add'. It has a close button (X) in the top right corner. Inside the dialog, there are two input fields: 'Name' and 'Description'. The 'Name' field is a single-line text box. The 'Description' field is a larger text area with a small icon in the bottom right corner. At the bottom right of the dialog are two buttons: 'Save' and 'Cancel'.

Edit Group

■ Edit Group Access Rights

Follow the steps below to edit the access rights of a group:

1. Check the group and click **Edit**.
Alternatively, you can move your cursor over the group and click the pencil icon.
2. Click **Access rights** and a window will pop up. An example is shown:



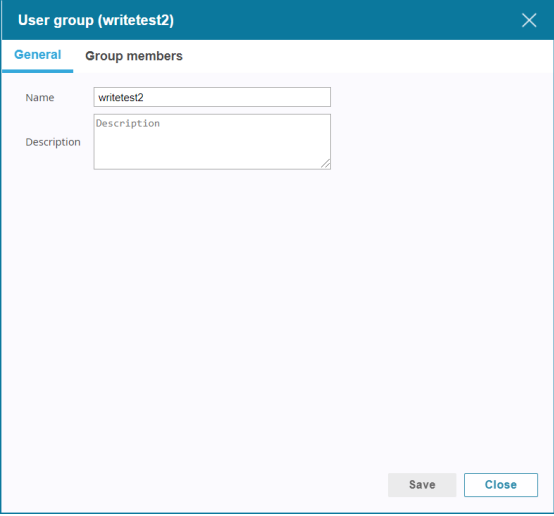
3. Check a device or port and click **Edit**.
Alternatively, you can move your cursor over the device or port and click the pencil icon.
A window will pop up. An example is shown:



4. Refer to the information in *Access rights* on page 88 to help you edit the rights.

■ Edit Properties

1. Check the group and click **Edit**.
Alternatively, you can move your cursor over the group and click the pencil icon.
2. Click **Properties** and a window will pop up. An example is shown:



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "User group (writetest2)". It has two tabs: "General" and "Group members". The "General" tab is active, showing a "Name" field with the text "writetest2" and a "Description" text area containing the word "Description". At the bottom right of the dialog are two buttons: "Save" and "Close".

3. Edit the options in this tab. You can change to a different tab by clicking it.
Refer to *Add Group* on page 142 for information about the two tabs shown here.

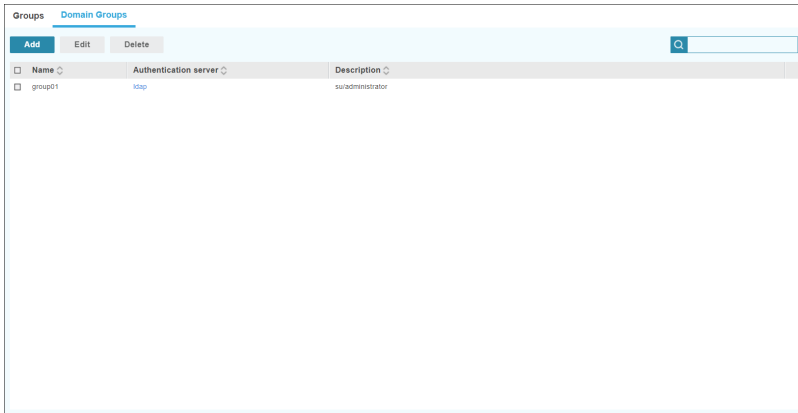
Delete Group

Check the group(s) and click **Delete**.

A confirmation message will pop up, click **Yes** to delete the group(s).

Domain Groups tab

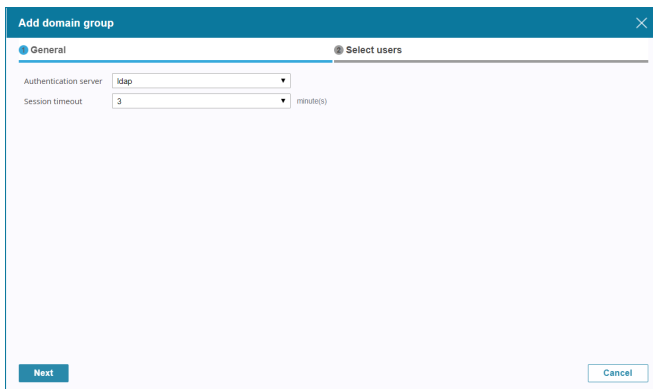
The Domain Groups tab is shown below:



You must have an external authentication service before you can configure this page. Refer to *Add Authentication Services* on page 149 on how to add authentication service.

Add Domain Group

1. Click **Add** for the Add domain group pop-up window:



2. Select the Authentication server and Session timeout by clicking and selecting from their corresponding drop-down menu.
3. Click **Next**. Where necessary, the server may prompt you for credential input. An example is shown:

Input credentials

Username

administrator

Password

Apply

Cancel

4. After entering the credentials, click **Apply**. You will be taken to the Select users page.

Add domain group

General

Select users

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Group name | Username | In folder | Description | In Auth group | Status |
|-------------------------------------|---|-----------------|---|--------------------------------|---------------|-------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Access Control Assistant | | CN=Access Control Assistance Operators,CN=... | Members of this group can acce | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Account Operators | | CN=Account Operators,CN=BuiltIn | Members of this group can acce | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Administrators | | CN=Administrators,CN=BuiltIn | Members of this group can acce | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | | Administrator | CN=Users | Members of this group can acce | | CC2000 user |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Allowed RODC Password Replication Group | | CN=Allowed RODC Password Replication Group,CN=... | Members of this group can acce | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Backup Operators | | CN=Backup Operators,CN=BuiltIn | Members of this group can acce | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Cert Publishers | | CN=Cert Publishers,CN=Users | Members of this group can acce | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | | 3700V-15253-S12 | OU=Domain Controllers | Members of this group can acce | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Certificate Service DCC | | CN=Certificate Service DCOM Access,CN=BuiltIn | Members of this group can acce | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Cloneable Domain Controllers | | CN=Cloneable Domain Controllers,CN=Users | Members of this group can acce | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Cryptographic Operator | | CN=Cryptographic Operators,CN=BuiltIn | Members of this group can acce | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Denied RODC Password Replication Group | | CN=Denied RODC Password Replication Group,CN=... | Members of this group can acce | | |

Back

Apply

Close

5. Check the group(s) and click **Apply**.

Authentication Services

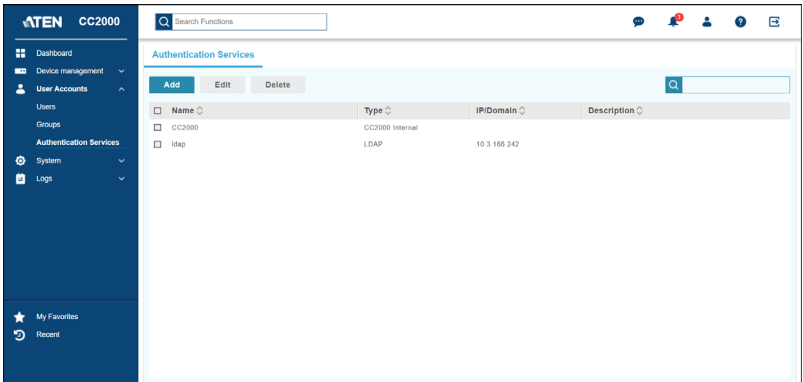
The CC2000 provides an internal *Username / Password* authentication service. In addition, the CC2000 supports the following third party external authentication servers: Active Directory, Kerberos, LDAP, RADIUS, TACACS+ and Windows NT Domain.

- Note:** 1. *Authentication* refers to determining the authenticity of the person logging in; *authorization* refers to assigning permission to use the device's various functions.
2. These external servers provide authentication services only – they do not provide authorization services. Authorization is provided through the CC2000 management system.

By adding an external authentication server to the CC2000 management system (see page 149 for details), when you add a user account, you can select the external authentication server from the list of authentication servers.

Note: For LDAP and Active Directory there is an additional authentication method in which the user attempting to log in does not have an account on the CC2000. In this case, the CC2000 checks the external server to see if it contains an account with the username and password of the user attempting to log in. If it does, the CC2000 checks to see if the user belongs to a group that corresponds to a CC2000 domain group. If it does, the CC2000 lets the user log in and assigns him the access rights of the group. See *Domain Groups tab*, page 146, for details.

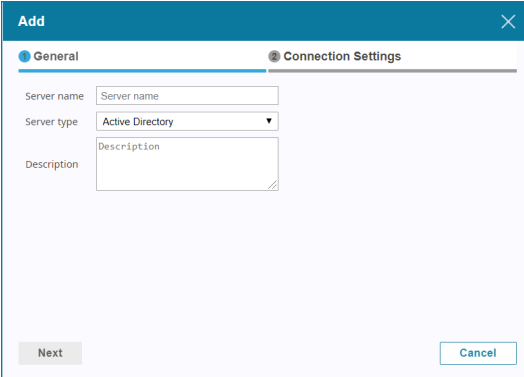
The Authentication Services submenu is shown below:



Add Authentication Services

Follow the steps below to add authentication services:

1. Click **Add** for a pop-up window as shown:



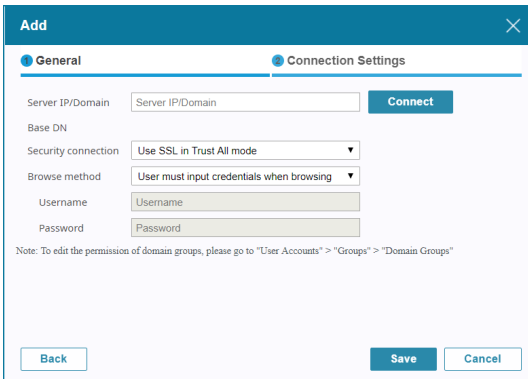
The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It has two tabs: "General" (selected) and "Connection Settings". Under the "General" tab, there are three input fields: "Server name" (text box), "Server type" (dropdown menu showing "Active Directory"), and "Description" (text area). At the bottom left is a "Next" button, and at the bottom right is a "Cancel" button.

2. Enter the Server name, choose the Server type using the drop-down menu, and enter a description for the server.

Note: 1. The Server name can be the equivalent of from 2–32 English alphanumeric characters, but cannot contain the following: " "

2. The Description can be up to 256 bytes.

3. Click **Next** for the Connection Settings page. This page will be different for different Server type.



The screenshot shows the same "Add" dialog box, but now the "Connection Settings" tab is selected. The "General" tab is still visible on the left. The "Connection Settings" tab contains the following fields: "Server IP/Domain" (text box) with a "Connect" button next to it, "Base DN" (text box), "Security connection" (dropdown menu showing "Use SSL in Trust All mode"), "Browse method" (dropdown menu showing "User must input credentials when browsing"), "Username" (text box), and "Password" (text box). At the bottom left is a "Back" button, and at the bottom right are "Save" and "Cancel" buttons. A note at the bottom reads: "Note: To edit the permission of domain groups, please go to 'User Accounts' > 'Groups' > 'Domain Groups'".

4. Enter information on the page. Refer to *Server Information* on page 150 for the information fields.

- 5. Enter the server IP/domain and click **Connect** to test the connection.
- 6. Select the Security connection and Browse method using the corresponding drop-down menu. Click **Save**.

Server Information

An explanation of the information required for each of the servers is provided, below.

1. Active Directory

| Heading | Information |
|---------------------|--|
| Server IP/Domain | Get the information for these fields from the Active Directory administrator. For example settings see <i>Active Directory Settings Example</i> , page 283. |
| Security connection | Use the drop-down menu to choose whether or not to use SSL in Trust All mode. |
| Browse Method | <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Select <i>Browse with user credentials</i> to allow the user to browse the Active Directory using credentials configured on the server. If this is selected the user doesn't have to input his credentials each time he browses.♦ Select <i>User must input credentials when browsing</i> to have the user input his credentials each time he browses the Active Directory. |

Add

General

Connection Settings

Server IP/Domain

Server IP/Domain

Connect

Base DN

Security connection

Use SSL in Trust All mode

Browse method

User must input credentials when browsing

Username

Username

Password

Password

Note: To edit the permission of domain groups, please go to "User Accounts" > "Groups" > "Domain Groups"

Back

Save

Cancel

2. Kerberos

| Heading | Information |
|---------------|--|
| KDC IP/Domain | Get the IP/Domain from the Kerberos administrator. |

| Heading | Information |
|----------|--|
| KDC port | Get the port information from the Kerberos administrator. |
| REALM | <p>This is the domain over which Kerberos authentication server has the authority to authenticate a user, host or service.</p> <p>Get the realm information from the Kerberos administrator.</p> |

3. LDAP

| Heading | Information |
|---------------------|---|
| Connection Settings | <p>Get the information for these fields from the LDAP administrator. The port default is 636, but check with the LDAP/LDAPS administrator to see if it may be something else.</p> <p>For example settings see <i>LDAP/LDAPS – OpenLDAP Setting Example</i>, page 281.</p> |
| Security connection | Use the drop-down menu to choose whether or not to use SSL in Trust All mode. |
| User RDN | <p>Get the information for these fields from the LDAP administrator.</p> <p>For example settings see <i>LDAP/LDAPS – OpenLDAP Setting Example</i>, page 281.</p> |

| Heading | Information |
|-----------------|--|
| Browsing Method | <ul style="list-style-type: none">◆ Select <i>Browse with user credentials</i> to allow the user to browse LDAP/LDAPS using credentials configured on the server. If this is selected the user doesn't have to input his credentials each time he browses.◆ Select <i>User must input credentials when browsing</i> to have the user input his credentials each time he browses the LDAP/LDAPS. |

Add

General

Connection Settings

Server IP/Domain

Server IP/Domain

Connect

Port

88

Base DN

Base DN

Key attribute

cn

Object class

person

Full name attribute

sn

Security connection

Use SSL in Trust All mode

User RDN

User RDN

Browse method

User must input credentials when browsing

Back

Save

Cancel

4. RADIUS and TACACS+

| Heading | Information |
|-------------------------|--|
| Connection Settings | Get the information for these fields from the service administrator. The default port for RADIUS is 1812 and TACACS+ is 49, but check with the service administrator to see if it may be something else. For example settings see <i>RADIUS Settings Example</i> , page 284 and <i>TACACS+ Settings Example</i> , page 286. |
| Authentication Settings | <p>Get the information for these fields from the service administrator. For example settings see <i>RADIUS Settings Example</i>, page 284 and <i>TACACS+ Settings Example</i>, page 286.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Use the drop-down menu to select the <i>Authentication type</i> your RADIUS/TACACS+ server is configured for.2. In the Shared Secret field, key in the character string that you use for authentication with the RADIUS server.3. Key the shared secret in again in the Confirm Shared Secret field. |

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It has two tabs: "General" (selected) and "Connection Settings". Under the "General" tab, there are four input fields: "Server IP/Domain" with a placeholder "Server IP/Domain", "Port" with the value "1812", "Authentication type" with a dropdown menu showing "CHAP", and "Shared secret" with a placeholder "Shared secret". To the right of the "Server IP/Domain" field is a blue "Connect" button. At the bottom of the dialog, there are three buttons: "Back", "Save", and "Cancel".

5. Windows NT Domain

Get the information for the Domain Name from the service administrator.
For example settings see *NT Domain Settings Example*, page 288.

This screenshot shows the same "Add" dialog box, but the "Port" and "Authentication type" fields are missing. Only the "Server IP/Domain" field with its placeholder and the "Connect" button are visible. The "Back", "Save", and "Cancel" buttons remain at the bottom.

CC2000 Authentication

With regard to the CC2000’s internal authentication services, there are some configuration settings you can make to the password policy function. All user accounts must follow the requirements you set here. To configure the CC2000’s password policy, do the following:

1. Check the server and click **Edit**.

Alternatively, you can move your cursor over the server and click the pencil icon.

Authentication server (CC2000)

Minimum username length

1

Minimum password length

0

☐ Password expiration

Password expires after

42

(days)

Enforce password history

1

☐ Passwords must contain upper letters.

☐ Passwords must contain lower letters.

☐ Passwords must contain numbers.

☐ Passwords must contain symbols.

Save

Close

2. Make the configuration choices you desire. Refer to the table below for an explanation of the fields.

| Minimum username length | The username length can be the equivalent of from 1–32 English alphanumeric characters. The default is 6 characters. |
|-------------------------|---|
| Minimum password length | The password length can be the equivalent of from 0–32 English alphanumeric characters. The default is 6 characters. A setting of 0 means that no password is required. Since this leaves your installation in a highly insecure state, we strongly recommend against a setting of 0. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | |
| Password expiration | For security purposes you can force users to renew their passwords at specific time intervals. To do so, enable <i>Password expiration</i> , then specify the number of days that the password will expire after. Once a password expires, a new one must be set. Passwords start expiring from the time an account is created, or a new password is set. |
| Enforce password history | For security purposes, enable this setting and enter the number of unique passwords that must be created before a user can use a password that was previously used. |
| Passwords must contain upper case letters | For security purposes, enable this setting to force the user to include upper case letters in the password. |
| Passwords must contain lower case letters | For security purposes, enable this setting to force the user to include lower case letters in the password. |
| Passwords must contain numbers | For security purposes, enable this setting to force the user to include numbers in the password. |
| Passwords must contain symbols | For security purposes, enable this setting to force the user to include symbols in the password. |

3. When you have finished, click **Save**.

Delete an Authentication Server

To delete an authentication server, check the server(s) and click **Delete**.

A confirmation message will pop up, click **Yes** to delete the user(s).

-
- Note:** 1. You can delete all deleteable servers by checking the box at the top of the column.
2. If a user account has been created on the CC2000 that uses an external authentication server, the server cannot be deleted.
-

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

Chapter 7

System

Overview

A CC2000 installation is comprised of CC2000 compatible devices residing on a network segment that are connected – over-IP – to a CC2000 server that also resides on that same network segment. By connecting individual CC2000 server segments through their IP addresses into an integrated worldwide network, the CC2000 provides secure, centralized, single IP address login access, to all your data center equipment from anywhere there is an internet connection, at any time.

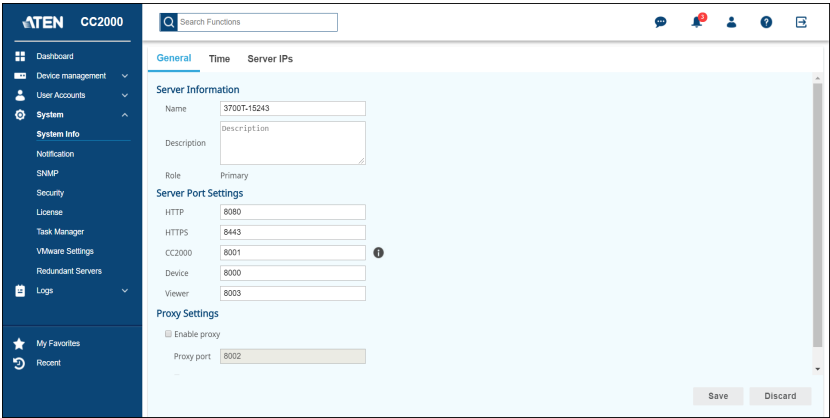
For administrative and deployment purposes, one of the CC2000 servers is considered the Primary server while the others are considered Secondaries. When you click the System, the CC2000 opens to the default System page, which looks similar to the screen below:

The screenshot displays the ATEN CC2000 web interface. On the left is a dark blue sidebar menu with icons and labels for: Dashboard, Device management, User Accounts, System (selected), System Info, Notification, SNMP, Security, License, Task Manager, VMware Settings, Redundant Servers, Logs, My Favorites, and Recent. The main content area has a light blue background and a top navigation bar with 'General', 'Time', and 'Server IPs' tabs. Below the tabs, the 'General' tab is active, showing 'Server Information' with fields for Name (3700T-15243), Description, and Role (Primary). Below that is 'Server Port Settings' with fields for HTTP (8080), HTTPS (8443), CC2000 (8001), Device (8000), and Viewer (8003). At the bottom is 'Proxy Settings' with an 'Enable proxy' checkbox and a 'Proxy port' field (8002). 'Save' and 'Discard' buttons are at the bottom right.

Note: The System page access is for Super Administrators, System Administrators and Auditors. Auditors can only view the items in this menu.

System Info

The System Info submenu offers three tab menu choices: General, Time and Server IPs. The default System Info page is General, and it looks similar to the one below:



General

The default page is General and looks similar to the one above:

Note: Changes to other servers on the installation can only be made by logging into them directly.

This page allows you to configure the CC2000 server’s settings.

The meanings of each fields are described in the table below:

| Field | Description |
|-------------|---|
| Name* | You can change the CC2000 server’s name by editing this field. |
| Description | You can change the CC2000 server’s description by editing this field. The description can be from 2–32 Bytes in any supported language. |
| Role | Indicates whether this server is a Primary or Secondary. |
| HTTP* | The port that the CC2000 uses to communicate with internet browsers. |
| HTTPS* | The secure port that the CC2000 uses to communicate with a browser over the internet. |
| CC2000* | The port that the CC2000 uses to communicate with other CC2000 servers on the installation. |
| Device* | The port that the CC2000 uses to communicate with devices on the installation. |

| Field | Description |
|------------------|---|
| Viewer | The port that the CC2000 uses for the viewers to communicate with when Multiviewer is in effect. See <i>Launch Viewer</i> , page 112. |
| Enable proxy | If you need to use the proxy function, check this box, then specify the proxy port in the indicated field. See <i>CC2000 Proxy Function</i> , page 243. |
| Always use proxy | If you wish to always use proxy function, check this box. |

Note: See the table on page 15 for more details.

When all your configuration settings have been made, click **Save**.

Time

The Time page allows you to automatically synchronized the time of the server the CC2000 is installed on to a network time server.

General

Time

Server IPs

Server time: 2019-05-22 15:24:00 (GMT+08:00) China Standard Time

☐ Automatically adjust clock for daylight savings time

☒ Synchronize with a NTP server

Preferred time server

AU | ntp1.cs.mu.OZ.AU

☐ Preferred custom server IP/Domain

0.0.0.0

☐ Alternate time server

AU | ntp1.cs.mu.OZ.AU

☐ Alternate custom server IP/Domain

0.0.0.0

Adjust time every

1

(days)

Adjust Time Now

Save

Discard

Note: If you are in a timezone that doesn't have daylight savings time, the **Automatically adjust clock for daylight savings time** checkbox is disabled.

To synchronize to a network time server, do the following:

1. Check the **Synchronize with a NTP server** checkbox.
2. Use the drop-down menu **Preferred time server** to select your preferred time server, or
Check the **Preferred custom server IP/Domain** checkbox, and key in the IP address of the time server of your choice.

3. If you want to configure an alternate time server, check the **Alternate time server** and **Alternate custom server IP/Domain** checkbox, and repeat step 2 for the Alternate customer time server IP/Domain entries.
4. Key in your choice for the number of days between synchronization procedures in **Adjust time every** field.
5. If you want to synchronize time immediately, click **Adjust Time Now**.
6. When all your settings have been made, click **Save**.

Server IPs

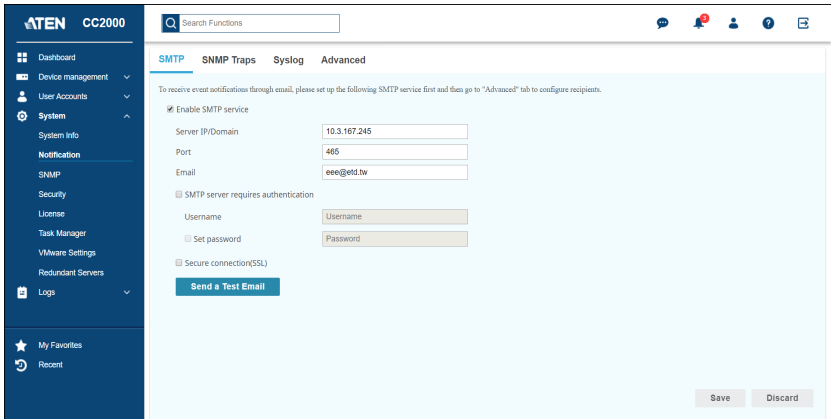
The Server IPs page shows available IP for the server that CC2000 is installed on. Check the checkbox of the IP(s) you wish to use and click **Save** to enable the server and make it Effective.

| IP | Status |
|--|-----------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.3.167.235 | Effective |
| <input type="checkbox"/> fe80:0:0:24a0:1f72:3e5:38b0 | New |

Save Discard

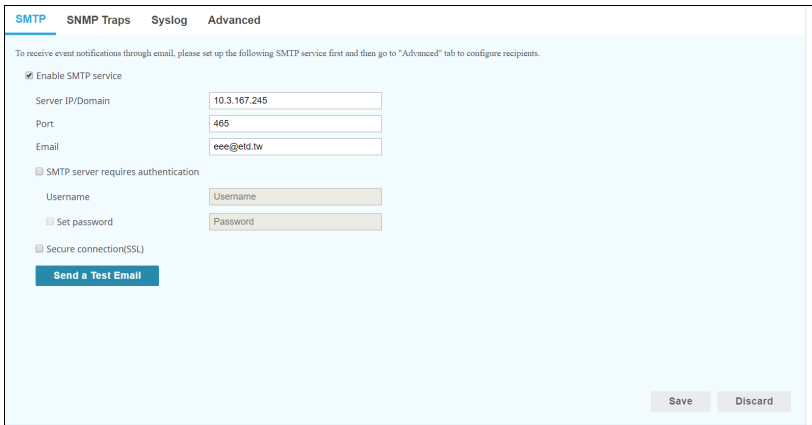
Notification

The Notification menu offers four tab menu choices: SMTP, SNMP Traps, Syslog and Advanced. The default Notification page is SMTP, and it looks similar to the one below:



SMTP

The CC2000 can send email notification of events traps on the installation to specified users.



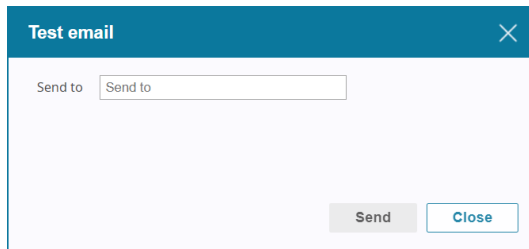
Note: Please set up the SMTP first and then go to *Advanced* tab to configure recipients, see page 165.

To enable SMTP server setting, do the following:

1. Check the **Enable SMTP service** checkbox.
2. Specify the IP address or domain name of the computer running your SMTP server in the **Server IP/Doamin** field.
3. Specify the port number in the **Port** field.
4. Specify the CC2000 administrator's email address in the **Email** field.

Note: This field cannot be blank.

5. If the SMTP server requires authentication, check the **SMTP server requires authentication** checkbox, then specify the authentication account username and check the **Set password** checkbox to set password in the appropriate fields.
6. If you wish to secure the SMTP through SLL, check the **Secure connection(SSL)** checkbox.
7. Click **Send a Test Email** to check that the SMTP server setting is configured properly. A screen similar to the one below appears:



8. Key in an email address for the recipient of the test email then click **Send**. If the settings have been configured correctly, the recipient will receive the test email.

Note: The email address of the recipient cannot exceed the equivalent of 128 English alphanumeric characters.

9. When all your settings have been made, click **Save**.

SNMP Traps

The SNMP Traps page lets you set your main SNMP trap settings, including information for up to four SNMP managers as detailed below:

The screenshot shows the 'SNMP Traps' configuration page. At the top, there are tabs for 'SMTP', 'SNMP Traps', 'Syslog', and 'Advanced'. Below the tabs, there is a text box stating: 'You can set CC2000 to push SNMP traps, which are event notifications, to an existing SNMP manager on the network.' Below this text box, there are two checkboxes: 'Send SNMP traps' and 'Forward device SNMP trap'. At the bottom right, there are 'Save' and 'Discard' buttons.

If you want to use SNMP trap notifications, do the following:

1. Check the **Send SNMP traps** checkbox to bring out the SNMP managers.
2. Check the **Forward device SNMP trap** checkbox if you want the trap information forwarded to a device.
3. Check the checkbox to configure the manager settings.

The screenshot shows the 'SNMP Traps' configuration page with the 'Forward device SNMP trap' checkbox checked. Below this checkbox, there is a table for configuring SNMP managers. The table has columns for 'Destination IP/Domain', 'Port', 'Version', 'Community/Username', 'Security level', 'Authentication', 'Authentication password', 'Privacy', and 'Privacy password'. There are four rows, each with a checkbox in the first column. The first row is highlighted with a red box. The values in the table are as follows:

| | Destination IP/Domain | Port | Version | Community/Username | Security level | Authentication | Authentication password | Privacy | Privacy password |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|------|---------|--------------------|----------------|----------------|-------------------------|---------|------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Destination IP/Domain | 162 | SNMPv1 | Community/Username | None | MD5 | Password | DES | Password |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Destination IP/Domain | 162 | SNMPv1 | Community/Username | None | MD5 | Password | DES | Password |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Destination IP/Domain | 162 | SNMPv1 | Community/Username | None | MD5 | Password | DES | Password |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Destination IP/Domain | 162 | SNMPv1 | Community/Username | None | MD5 | Password | DES | Password |

4. Key in the IP address(es) in the **Destination IP/Domain** field and the service port number(s) in the **Port** field of the manager computer(s) to be notified of SNMP trap events. The valid port range is 1–65535. The default port number is 162.

Note: Make sure that the port number you specify here matches the port number used by the SNMP receiver computer.

5. Use the drop-down menu **Version** to select from one of the three options available, SNMPv21, SNMPv2c, and SNMPv3.
6. Key in the **Community/Username** value(s) for the SNMP version and select **Security level**.
7. Use the drop-down menu **Authentication** to select your authentication type, and key in the authentication password(s) in **Authentication password** field that correspond to each of the stations.
8. Use the drop-down menu **Privacy** to select your Privacy type and key in the privacy password(s) in **Privacy password** field that correspond to each of the stations.
9. Repeat steps 4–8 for up to three further SNMP managers.
10. When all your settings have been made, click **Save**.

Note: Make sure all the fields are filled in correctly so the system can successfully save your settings.

Syslog

SMTP SNMP Traps **Syslog** Advanced

To send event logs to a Syslog server, please set up the following Syslog service.

☒ Enable Syslog service

Server IP/Domain: 10.3.167.245

Port: 514

Protocol: TCP

☐ Secure connection (SSL)

Message: Short

Language: English

Save Discard

To record all the events that take place on the CC2000 and write them to a Syslog server, do the following:

1. Check the **Enable Syslog service** checkbox.
2. Key in the IP address in the **Server IP/Domain** field and the port number of the Syslog server in **Port** field. The valid port range is 1-65535.

3. Use the drop-down menu **Protocol** to select the protocol type from two options: UDP and TCP.
If TCP is selected, you can check the **Secure connection (SSL)** checkbox to enable secure connection (SSL).
4. Use the drop-down menu **Message** to select whether to log a short message or a full message.
5. Use the drop-down menu **Language** to select the language you want the message to be sent in.
6. When all your settings have been made, click **Save**.

Advanced

The Advanced page is used to inform specified users of specified events that occurred on the CC2000. When you select Advanced, a page similar to the one below appears:

SMTPSNMP TrapsSyslogAdvanced

You can set up the recipients to receive email notification when specific system events occur.

AddEditTestDelete

Subject

1111

Mail from

ccc@etd.tw

Recipients

bbb@etd.tw


Message Type

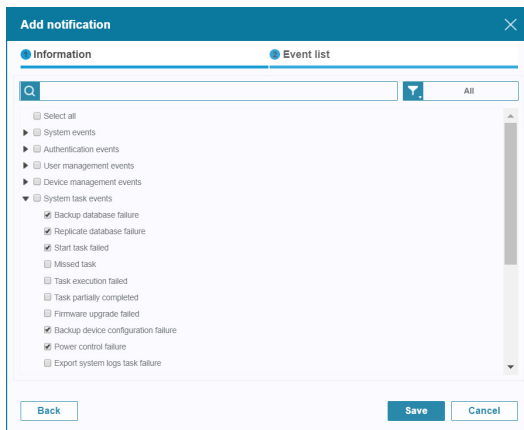
Short

Adding Notification Settings

There are four buttons in the Advanced page: Add, Edit, Test, and Delete. Follow the instructions below to add users and specify the events they will receive notification of.

1. Click **Add** for the Add notification page:

2. Key an appropriate title for the notification message in the **Subject** field
3. Key in the email address of one of the administrators in the **Mail from** field.
4. Key in the email address of the person who will receive the email notification in the **Recipients** field. If you want the notification to go to more than one person, use a semicolon to separate the email addresses. There should not be a space before or after the semicolon.
5. Use the drop-down menu **Message Type** to select your message type, Full or Short.
6. Use the drop-down menu **Language** and **Time zone** to select the language and time you want the message to be sent in. Check the **Automatically adjust clock for Daylight Saving Time** checkbox if you are in a timezone that has Daylight Saving Time.
7. Click **Next** to select event(s) that you want to receive email notification of. You can use the filter  on the top-right corner to help you see what you have selected. Select **Selected** to check the event(s) you have selected, or select **All** to display all the events.



8. When you have finished selecting the event(s) on this page, click **Save** to save your configuration and return to the Advanced page.

Note: In order for users to receive email notification of events, SMTP settings information must be configured on the CC2000's SMTP Settings page (see page 161 for details).

Edit Notification Settings

To modify a notification's settings, do the following:

1. Check the checkbox of the notification's name and click **Edit**.
2. Make your desired changes on the Information and Event list from **Edit notification** page.
3. When all your settings have been made, click **Save** at the bottom-right of the panel.

Testing Event Notifications

To test event notifications, do the following:

1. Check the checkbox of the notification's name and click **Test**.
2. If the system is working properly, the event notification recipient will receive an email with the event notification. If it fails, a fail message will appear.

Deleting Notification Settings

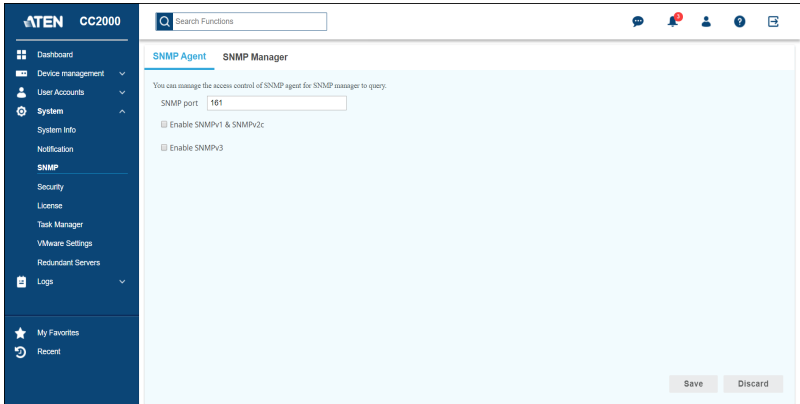
To delete a notification setting, check the checkbox of the notification's name and click **Delete**. A confirmation message will be shown, click **Yes** to proceed.

Delete notification

Are you sure you want to delete the selected notification(s)?

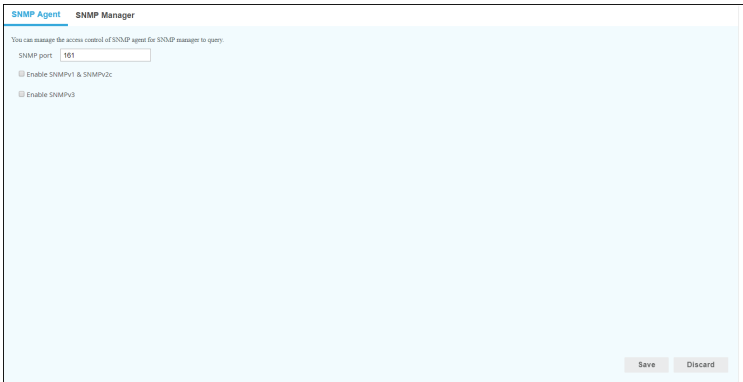
SNMP

The **SNMP** menu offers two tab menu choices: **SNMP Agent** and **SNMP Manager**. You can manage the access control of SNMP agent for SNMP manager to query. The default SNMP page is **SNMP Agent** and it looks similar to the one below:



SNMP Agent

The SNMP Agent page lets you set the CC2000’s agents and control access for SNMP trap events as detailed below:



To set the SNMP agents, do the following:

1. In the SNMP Port field, key in the port number(s) of the agent computer(s) that will collect trap event information. The valid port range is 1–65535. The default port is 161.

Note: Make sure that the port number you specify here matches the port number used by the SNMP manager.

- For SNMPv1 & SNMPv2c, check the **Enable SNMPv1 & SNMPv2c** checkbox and its configuration will be shown.

The screenshot shows the 'SNMP Manager' tab in the configuration interface. It includes a text field for 'SNMP port' set to '161'. Below it, the checkbox 'Enable SNMPv1 & SNMPv2c' is checked. A table with columns 'No.', 'Community', 'Access type', and 'Allowed NMS IP' is visible, with two rows showing 'Community' and 'Disable'.

- Key in the community name in the Community field and select the **Access Type** from the drop-down menu (Disable / Read / Write). If Read or Write is selected, Allowed NMS IP field will light up, fill in a NMS IP address.
- For SNMPv3, check the **Enable SNMPv3** checkbox and its configuration will be shown.

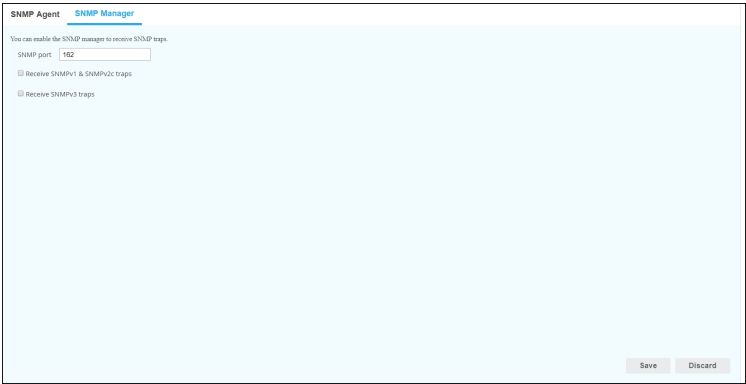
The screenshot shows the 'SNMP Manager' tab with 'Enable SNMPv3' checked. It displays a table for SNMPv3 configuration with columns: Username, Security level, Authentication, Authentication password, Privacy, Privacy password, and Allowed NMS IP. The table has four rows, each with input fields for these parameters.

- Check the checkbox of the SNMP Agent, enter a Username in the username field and select a **Security Level** from the drop-down menu (None / Auth Protocol / Authentication & Privacy).
- Select the **Authentication** protocols from the drop-down menu (MD5 / SHA) and key in the authentication password(s) in the Authentication password field.
- Select the **Privacy** protocols and key in the privacy password in the Privacy password field.
- Key in the allowed NMS IP address that correspond to each of the profiles in the Allowed NMS IP field.
- Click **Save** to save your settings.

Note: Make sure all the fields are filled in correctly so the system can successfully save your configurations.

SNMP Manager

The SNMP Manager page lets you set the CC2000’s management stations to receive notifications of SNMP trap events as detailed below:

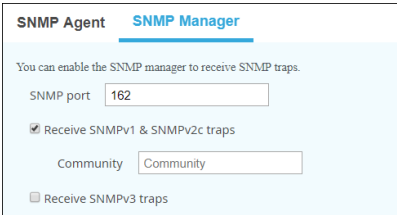


To set the SMNP managers, do the following:

1. In the SNMP port field, key in the service port number(s) of the computer(s) that will receive notifications. The valid port range is 1–65535. The default port is 162.

Note: Make sure that the port number you specify here matches the port number used by the SNMP agent computer.

2. For SNMPv1 & SNMPv2c, check the **Receive SNMPv1 & SNMPv2c traps** checkbox and a community field will appear.



3. Key in the community value(s) for the SNMP version.

4. For SNMPv3, check the **Receive SNMPv3 traps** checkbox and its configuration will be shown.

SNMP Agent

SNMP Manager

You can enable the SNMP manager to receive SNMP traps.

SNMP port

☐ Receive SNMPv1 & SNMPv2c traps

☒ Receive SNMPv3 traps

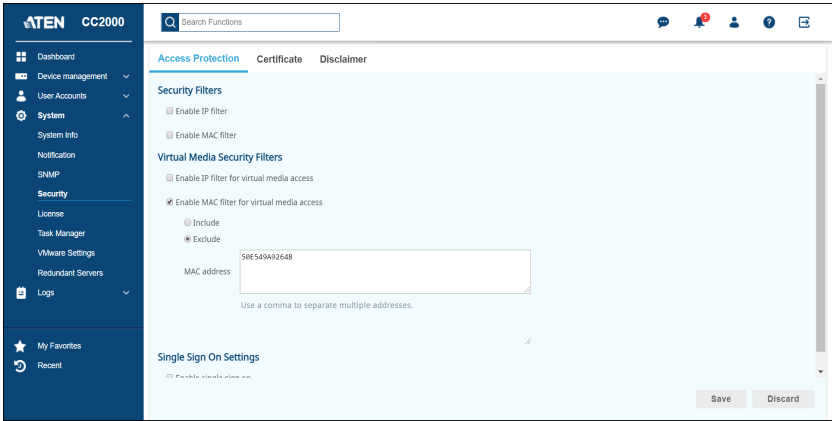
| | Username | Security level | Authentication | Authentication password | Privacy | Privacy password |
|--------------------------|----------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------------------------------|---------|---------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | None | SHA | <input type="text" value="Password"/> | DES | <input type="text" value="Password"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | None | SHA | <input type="text" value="Password"/> | DES | <input type="text" value="Password"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | None | SHA | <input type="text" value="Password"/> | DES | <input type="text" value="Password"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | None | SHA | <input type="text" value="Password"/> | DES | <input type="text" value="Password"/> |

5. Check the checkbox of the SNMP Manager, enter a Username in the username field and select a **Security Level** from the drop-down menu (None / Auth Protocol / Authentication & Privacy).
6. Select the **Authentication** protocols from the drop-down menu (MD5 / SHA) and key in the authentication password(s) in the Authentication password field.
7. Select the **Privacy** protocols and key in the privacy password(s) in the Privacy password field.
8. Click **Save** to save your settings.

Note: Make sure all the fields are filled in correctly so the system can successfully save your configurations.

Security

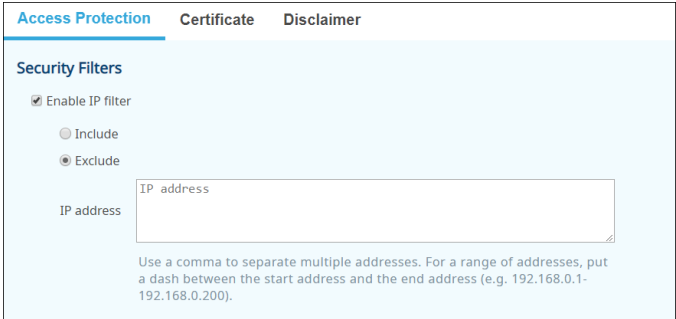
The **Security** menu offers three tab menu choices: **Access Protection**, **Certificate** and **Disclaimer**. This page provides a level of security by controlling access to the CC2000. The default Security page is **Access Protection**, and it looks similar to the one below:



Access Protection

IP Filtering

IP filtering controls access to the CC2000 based on the IP addresses of the computers attempting to connect to it.



- ♦ To enable IP filtering, check the **Enable IP filter** checkbox.
 - ♦ If the **Include** button is selected, all the addresses specified in the Address List are allowed access while all others are denied access.

- ♦ If the **Exclude** button is selected, all the addresses specified in the Address List are denied access while all others are allowed access.
- ♦ IP filters can consist of a single address, or a range of addresses. You can add as many IP addresses as you require. Key the addresses directly into the **IP address** text input box as follows:
 - ♦ For multiple single address entries, use a comma between the IP addresses. There is no space before or after the commas.
 - ♦ For a range of filters, key in the starting IP address, followed by a dash, then the ending IP address.
- ♦ Click **Save** to save your settings.
- ♦ To modify or delete a filter, make your changes directly in the **IP address** text input box.

MAC Filtering

MAC filtering controls access to the CC2000 based on the MAC addresses of the computers attempting to connect to it.

The screenshot shows the 'Access Protection' tab in the CC2000 configuration interface. Under the 'Security Filters' section, the 'Enable MAC filter' checkbox is checked. Below it, the 'Validate MAC at CC2000 login' checkbox is unchecked. The 'Include' radio button is selected, and the 'Exclude' radio button is unselected. A text input field labeled 'MAC address' is present, with a placeholder text 'MAC address'. Below the input field, a note states 'Use a comma to separate multiple addresses.'

- ♦ To enable MAC filtering, check the **Enable MAC filter** checkbox.
 - ♦ If **Validate MAC at CC2000 login** is enabled, the CC2000 will verify the client PC's MAC address when the user attempts to log in. Otherwise, the MAC address will only be verified when attempting to open a viewer.
 - ♦ If the **Include** button is selected, all the addresses specified in the address list are allowed access while all others are denied access.
 - ♦ If the **Exclude** button is selected, all the addresses specified in the address list are denied access while all others are allowed access.

- ♦ MAC filters can consist of a single address, or a range of addresses. You can add as many MAC addresses as you require. Key the addresses directly into the MAC address field. Use a comma between the addresses with no space before or after the comma(s).
- ♦ Click **Save** to save your settings.

Virtual Media Security Filters

IP and MAC filtering can also be used to control Virtual Media access, based on the IP and MAC addresses of the computers attempting to use virtual media access.

- ♦ To enable Virtual Media Security Filters, check the **Enable IP filter for virtual media access** or **Enable MAC filter for virtual media access** checkbox and follow the instructions given in *IP Filtering*, page 173 or *MAC Filtering*, page 174.
- ♦ Click **Save** to save your settings.

Single Sign On Settings

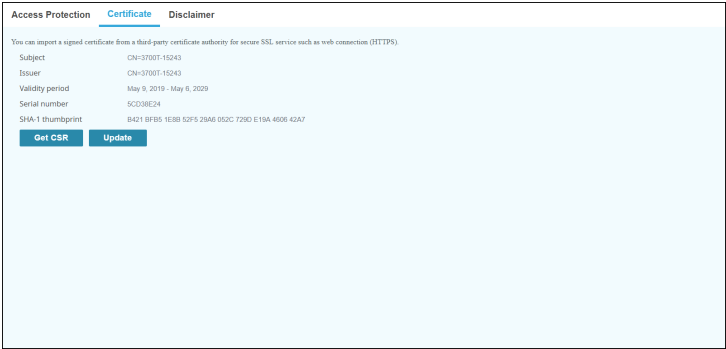
If **Single Sign On Settings** is enabled, it will allow users from another web application to log in CC2000 automatically through a form-based authentication. To integrate, please refer to *SSO HTML Sample Codes* on page 297.

Certificate

When logging in over a secure (SSL) connection, a signed certificate is used to verify that the user is logging in to the site he intended. The Certificate page is used to create, modify, or obtain a certificate for this purpose.

You can import a signed certificate from a third-party certificate authority for secure SSL service such as web connection (HTTPS).

During installation, each CC2000 creates its own, independent, self-signed certificate based on the installation information similar to the one below:



Changing a Self-Signed Certificate

Changing a self-signed certificate allows you to provide additional information in the certificate that wasn't generated in the installation certificate. The way to change a self-signed SSL certificate is to create a new one. To create a new self-signed certificate, do the following:

1. At the bottom-left of the page, click **Update** for the following page:

Update server certificate

☒ Create a new self-signed SSL server certificate

Key length: 2048

Common name: Common name

Organization: Organization

Organizational unit: Organizational unit

City or location: City or location

State or Province: State or Province

Country: Afghanistan

☐ Import a signed SSL server certificate

Certificate: Select a local file to upload **Browse...**

☐ Import private key and certificate

Private key: Select a local file to upload **Browse...**

Private certificate: Select a local file to upload **Browse...**

Apply **Cancel**

2. Check the **Create a new self-signed SSL server certificate** checkbox and fill in the fields according to the information in the table below:

| Field | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Key length | Use the drop-down menu to select the key length (number of bits) for the certificate. Options are 1024, 2048, and 4096. |
| Common Name | This is the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) for which you are requesting the SSL certificate. For example: www.yourdomainname.com |
| Organization | This is your Full Legal Company or Personal Name, as legally registered in your locality. |
| Organizational Unit | The branch of your company that is ordering the certificate. For example: accounting, marketing, etc. |
| City or Location | Key in the full name of the city or location. For example: Taipei |
| State or Province | Key in the full name of the state or province. |

| Field | Description |
|---------|---|
| Country | <p>This is the two letter country code for the country where the organization that the certificate is being registered to is located.</p> <p>Note: These don't always correspond to common abbreviations. If you are not sure of the code, you can do an online search for ssl+country codes.</p> |

3. When you have finished filling in the fields, click **Apply**.

A message appears asking you to wait while the database gets updated with the new information. After a moment the web page closes.

At this point you are brought back to the beginning of the login sequence where you must go through the procedure of accepting the security certificate and logging in.

Importing a Signed SSL Server Certificate

In order to avoid users having to go through the certificate acceptance prompt each time they log in, administrators may choose to use a third party certificate authority (CA) signed certificate.

To use a third party signed certificate, do the following:

1. After generating the self-signed certificate, click **Get CSR** (Certificate Signing Request).
2. Go to the CA website of your choice and apply for an SSL certificate using the information generated in step 1.
3. After the CA sends you the certificate, open the Certificate page, click **Update** at the bottom-left of the panel.

Update server certificate

☐ Create a new self-signed SSL server certificate

Key length: 2048

Common name: Common name

Organization: Organization

Organizational unit: Organizational unit

City or location: City or location

State or Province: State or Province

Country: Afghanistan

☒ Import a signed SSL server certificate

Certificate: Select a local file to upload **Browse...**

☐ Import private key and certificate

Private key: Select a local file to upload **Browse...**

Private certificate: Select a local file to upload **Browse...**

Apply **Cancel**

4. Check **Import a signed SSL server certificate** checkbox, then browse to where the certificate file is located and select it.
5. Click **Apply** at the bottom-right of the panel.

Note: Each of the certificate types mentioned in this section provides an equal level of security. The advantage of the changed self-signed certificate is that it allows you to provide more information than the installation certificate. The advantage of a CA third party certificate is that users do not have to go through the certificate acceptance prompt each time they log in, and it provides the additional assurance that a recognized authority has certified that the certificate is valid.

Import Private Key and Certificate

When logging in over a secure (SSL) connection, a signed certificate is used to verify that the user is logging in to the intended site. For enhanced security, the Private Certificate section allows you to use your own private encryption key and signed certificate, rather than the default ATEN certificate.

Update server certificate

☒ Create a new self-signed SSL server certificate

Key length: 2048

Common name: Common name

Organization: Organization

Organizational unit: Organizational unit

City or location: City or location

State or Province: State or Province

Country: Afghanistan

☐ Import a signed SSL server certificate

Certificate: Select a local file to upload **Browse...**

☒ Import private key and certificate

Private key: Select a local file to upload **Browse...**

Private certificate: Select a local file to upload **Browse...**

Apply **Cancel**

There are two methods for establishing your private certificate: generating a self-signed certificate; and importing a third-party certificate authority (CA) signed certificate.

- ◆ **Generating a Self-Signed Certificate**

If you wish to create your own self-signed certificate, a free utility – openssl.exe – is available for download over the web. See *Self-Signed Private Certificates*, page 255 for details about using OpenSSL to generate your own private key and SSL certificate.

- ◆ **Obtaining a CA Signed SSL Server Certificate**

For the greatest security, we recommend using a third party certificate authority (CA) signed certificate. To obtain a third party signed certificate, go to a CA (Certificate Authority) website to apply for an SSL certificate. After the CA sends you the certificate and private encryption key, save them to a convenient location on your computer.

- ◆ **Importing the Private Certificate**

To import the private certificate, do the following:

1. Click **Update**.
2. Click **Browse** on the right of **Private key**, locate your private encryption key file and select it.

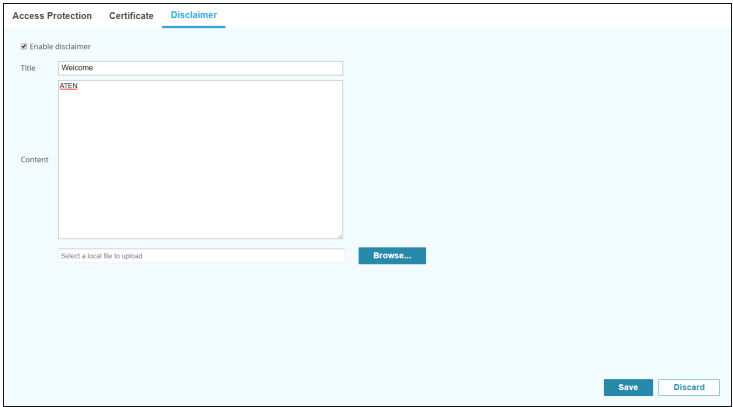
3. Click **Browse** on the right of **Private certificate**, locate your certificate file and select it.
4. Click **Apply** at the bottom-right of the panel.

Note: Both the private encryption key and the signed certificate must be imported at the same time.

Disclaimer

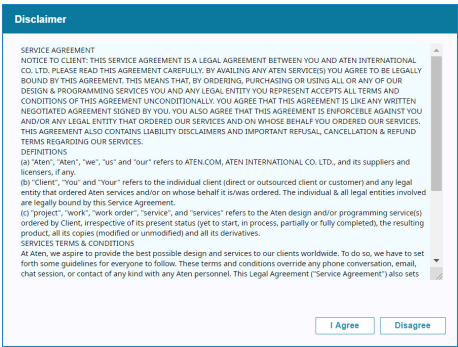
A disclaimer notice can be setup on the CC2000 server for users to accept when he/she logs into CC2000.

To setup a disclaimer, check the Enable disclaimer checkbox, enter the title and content of the disclaimer and click **Save**.



You can also click **Browse** to upload a previously saved disclaimer file.

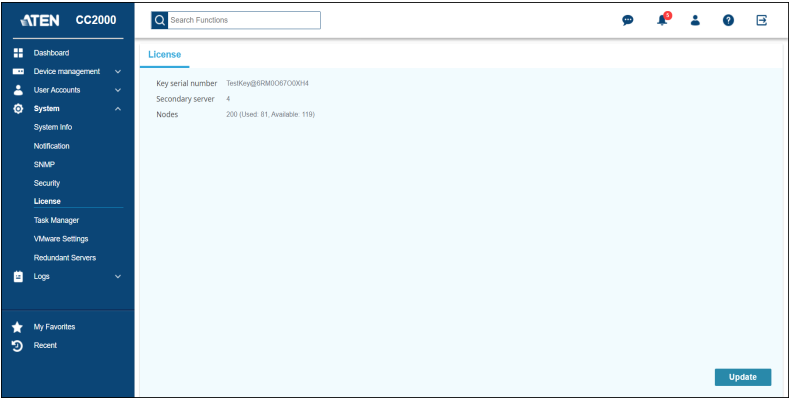
When logged in, the disclaimer message may look similar to the one below:



License

The CC2000 license controls the number of nodes permitted on the CC2000 server installation. The default license that comes with your purchase is a demo license for one Primary (no Secondaries), that allows 16 nodes. To add anything more (Secondary servers and nodes), you must upgrade the license.

When you select **License** from the System menu, a page similar to the one below appears:



The meanings of the page items are described in the table below:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| Key serial number | The serial number of the license key. Note: This is different from the software serial number that you used when installing the CC2000 server. The license serial number can be found on the key. |
| Secondary server | The total number of Secondary server on the installation (up to 31 units – depending on the license purchase). |
| Nodes | The total number of nodes permitted on the installation according to the license purchase. Note: The number of nodes that can be licensed is unlimited – it depends on the license purchase. |

Updating the License

To update the license:

1. Contact your dealer to obtain a license key for the number of Secondaries and nodes you want to be able to access.
2. Insert the license key into a USB port on your Primary server.

3. Click **Update** at the bottom-right of the License panel.

Note: 1. Once the update has completed, it is no longer necessary to keep the key plugged into the USB port. Remove the key and place it somewhere safe, since you will need it for future updates.

2. If you lose the USB license key, contact your dealer to obtain another one. If you supply the key's serial number, the new key will contain all of the information that was stored on the lost key.

3. If the CC2000 is installed on a Windows Hyper-V virtual machine, the license may fail to update when using the USB license key. This is because Hyper-V cannot pass USB non-disk devices through to virtual machines. In this case, you can use a 3rd-party software such as USB Redirector to allow the virtual machine to access the USB license key for the update.

License Sharing

The number of licenses for authorized devices on a CC2000 installation is set on the Primary server through the license key, and are shared by all the CC2000 servers. Information about the number of licenses is sent to each Secondary at the time that it registers with the Primary (see *View Properties*, page 204).

Although there is no limit to the number of devices that can be added to the CC2000 management system, only as many nodes as there are licenses for can actually be created for management (see *Preliminary Procedures*, page 52).

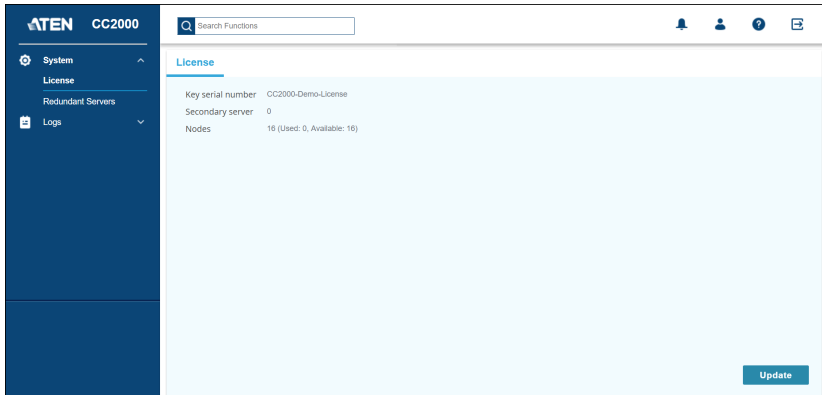
When devices are added to the CC2000 management system the default configuration is for them to be locked. Although their configuration information is stored by the CC2000, they cannot be managed.

Locked ports can be unlocked either by selecting a physical port and unlocking it by clicking the **Unlock** button (see *Locking / Unlocking Devices*, page 98), or by making the port part of an aggregate device (see *Adding an Aggregate Device*, page 76).

If all the licenses are in use, only if a currently unlocked port is locked, or if an aggregate device is deleted – thereby freeing up the license it was using – can a locked port (or new aggregate device) use that license to become unlocked and be capable of being managed by the CC2000 management system.

License Conflict

If there are two Primaries on the same network segment that have been upgraded with the same license key, a license conflict will occur. The Browser GUI of the CC2000 server that was the second one to be installed, will open to a page that looks similar to the one below:



To confirm that a conflict has occurred, click the **Logs** tab. A sentence like the following will appear in the log file: A license violation has been detected at Primary server. Remote CC server (IP: [the conflicting servers' IP]).

If this occurs there are a number of ways to resolve the conflict:

1. On one of the two Primaries: either shut it down, or stop service, or disconnect it from the network, or uninstall the CC2000.
2. Register the conflicting CC2000 (the second one) with the normal one (the first one). The Registered CC2000 becomes a Secondary. (This assumes that there is a Secondary license available.)
3. If you would really like to have two independent CC2000 installations, contact your dealer to purchase a separate key for one of the CC2000 servers.

Task Manager

The **Task Manager** menu offers four configuration choices: **Add**, **Edit**, **Run Now**, and **Delete**. This page allows authorized administrators to perform a number of system maintenance tasks. The tasks that can be performed are determined by the user’s type, and the authorization options that were selected when the user’s account was created. These include:

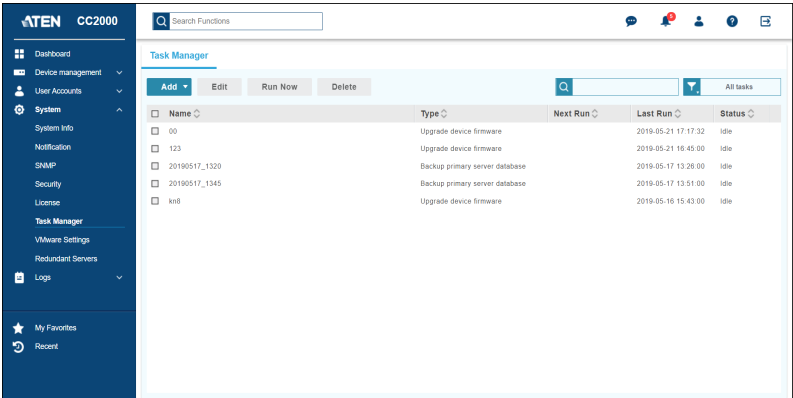
- ◆ Backup primary server database

Note: 1. This task is only available on a Primary CC2000

2. Restoring the database requires a separate utility and procedure. See *Restore*, page 259, for details.

- ◆ Power control a device
- ◆ Auto upgrade with latest device firmware
- ◆ Upgrade device firmware
- ◆ Backup device configuration
- ◆ Export event logs
- ◆ Export device log
- ◆ Export serial console history

When you select **Task Manager** from the System menu, a screen similar to the one below appears:



Note: This figure depicts a page for a Primary server. The page for a Secondary server is similar, except that it has a pre-configured default entry, *Replicate Database*, that replicates its database on the Primary it is connected to (see *Replicate Database*, page 201).

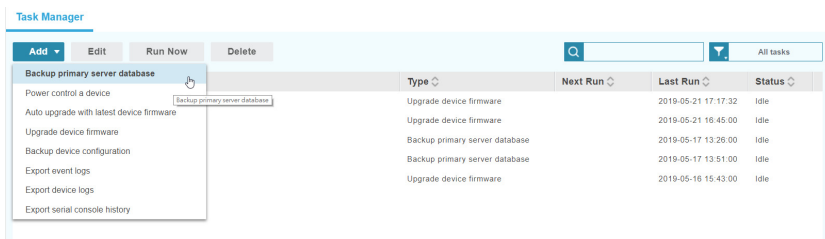
The **Task Manager** table lists all the tasks that have been configured. The meanings of each headings are explained in the table below:

| Heading | Explanation |
|----------|---|
| Name | The name you gave to the task when you configured it. |
| Type | The type of task that you configured. |
| Next Run | If the task is scheduled to be run at a certain time, the time that it will run appears here. |
| Last Run | Indicates the last time that the task ran. |
| Status | Indicates whether the task is running or is idle. |

Add

To add a task, do the following:

1. Click **Add** a list of task choices:



2. Click to select the task you want to add. A pop-up window appears and the content depends on the selected task.

While each of the tasks is different, for the most part the procedures involved in setting them up are similar. The following examples take you through the various task procedures you will encounter.

Backup Primary Server Database

When you choose the **Backup primary server database** task, the following page appears:

1. Provide a name and a password for the task.

Note: 1. This task is only available on the Primary server.

2. The password is required. If you set one, make a note of it and store it in a safe place. You will need it when restoring the database. (If you don't set a password you can restore the database without one.) See *Restore*, page 259, for information on restoring the database.
 3. The password cannot exceed the equivalent of 32 English alphanumeric characters.
 4. The extension of the backup file is cbk (* .cbk).
-

2. Select the **Backup location** where you want to store the backup file in. There are three options to choose from, **User specified local folder**, **FTP server**, and **Remote shared folder**.

- ♦ The default setting is for the backup file to be stored in a local directory based on the directory that the CC2000 was installed in. For example, C:\CC2000\DataBaseBackup.

- ♦ Fill in the rest of the fields if you choose FTP server or Remote shared folder.
3. When you have filled in the all the informations, click **Next** for the Schedule page.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add - Backup primary server database" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It has two tabs: "General" and "Schedule". The "Schedule" tab is active. Inside the "Schedule" tab, there is a "Schedule" dropdown menu set to "One time only". Below it is a "Start (date/time)" text box containing "2019-06-17 14:24" with a red "X" icon to its right. There is also a checkbox labeled "Run the task immediately" which is currently unchecked. At the bottom of the dialog, there are three buttons: "Back", "Add", and "Cancel".

4. Use the drop-down menu Schedule to see a list of available choices.

This is a close-up of the "Schedule" dropdown menu. The menu is open, showing a list of options: "One time only" (which is highlighted in blue), "Periodic", "Daily", "Weekly", and "Monthly". The "Schedule" label is to the left of the dropdown, and the "Start (date/time)" text box is visible below it.

Depending on what you select for the Schedule, further scheduling choices may appear. For examples, if you choose One time only, the Start (date/time) appears. If you choose Periodic, the Optional period field appears.

Note: If you set a time in the schedule for the backup to take place (Monthly, for example), but you want it to start with this month, make sure you set the start date or time to later than the date or time shown on the page and uncheck Run the task immediately. Since the time setting on the page shows the time that you accessed the page, it will have passed by the time you save your changes. Which means that the CC2000 will not execute the task until next month.

5. When you have finished making your schedule choices, click **Add**.
The task is now added to the Task List on the main page.

Task Manager

AddEditRun NowDelete

All tasks

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Name | Type | Next Run | Last Run | Status |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------------------|----------|---------------------|--------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00 | Upgrade device firmware | | 2019-05-21 17:17:32 | Idle |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 123 | Upgrade device firmware | | 2019-05-21 16:45:00 | Idle |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 20190517_120 | Backup primary server database | | 2019-05-17 13:26:00 | Idle |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 20190517_1345 | Backup primary server database | | 2019-05-17 13:51:00 | Idle |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | kn8 | Upgrade device firmware | | 2019-05-16 15:43:00 | Idle |

Note: You can run a task (or tasks) at any time by checking the checkbox and click **Run Now**.

Power Control a Device

This task allows you to set a time schedule that automates turning power ports on and off.

Add - Power control a device

1 Properties

2 Schedule

Task name

Category

Network host via PDU

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Name | Type | IP | Server | Description | Operation |
|--------------------------|---------------------|------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | HP iLO5 | HP iLO 5 | 10.3.166.42 | 3700T-15243 | | All On |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | WIN-JC2KKFUPSK | HyperV Server | | | | All On |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | aaaaa | Generic | | 3700T-15243 | | All On |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | localhost.localdoms | VMware ESX/ESX | | | | All On |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | localhost.localdoms | Citrix XenServer | | | | All On |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | sasd | Generic | | 3700T-15243 | | All On |

Next

Cancel

- 1. Provide a name for the task.

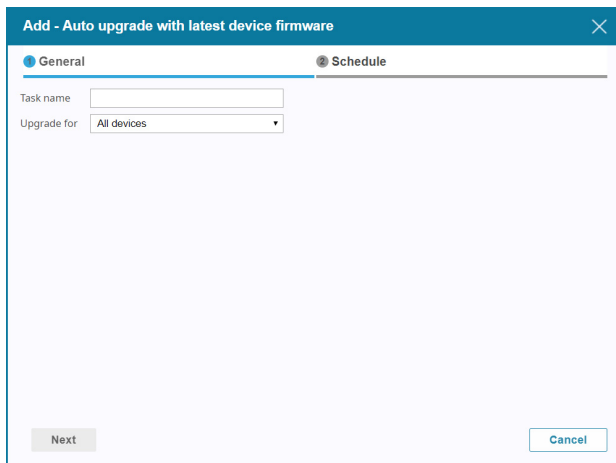
2. Choose to turn on or off for the selected device as a whole, or on a port-by-port basis by clicking and selecting from the Category drop-down menu.
3. Check the checkbox of the target devices or ports you want to control, or check the checkbox in front of Name at the top of the column to select all of them.
4. Select whether to turn the ports On or Off in the Operation column.
5. Click **Next** for the Schedule page.
6. Make your schedule choices in the Schedule page.

Note: Refer to *Backup Primary Server Database* on page 187 as the schedule page is similar.

7. Click **Add** to finish setting up the task.

Auto upgrade with latest device firmware

This task allows you to schedule auto device firmware upgrade with the newest available firmware.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add - Auto upgrade with latest device firmware". It has two tabs: "General" (active) and "Schedule". In the "General" tab, there is a "Task name" text input field and an "Upgrade for" dropdown menu with "All devices" selected. At the bottom left is a "Next" button, and at the bottom right is a "Cancel" button.

1. Provide a name for the task.
2. Use the drop-down menu **Upgrade for** to choose which appliances will receive the auto upgrade from one of the three options, **All devices**, **Selected device type**, and **Selected device**.

3. If you choose All devices (recommended), all the devices are automatically selected for the upgrade.

If you choose Selected device type, use the drop-down menu to select the device type you want to upgrade.

Upgrade for

Selected device type

CS17xxiA

CN8000

CN8000A

CN8000LG

CN8000R1

CN8600

CS1708i

CS1716i

CS17xxiA

Kx15xxAi

KL11xxVN

KN11xxVA

KN8 Family

SNCO Family

IP8000

KH1508Ai

KH1508i

KH1516Ai

KH1516i

KH2508Ai

KH2516Ai

If you choose Selected device, check the checkbox of the device(s) you want to upgrade, or check the checkbox in front of Name at the top of the column to select all of them.

Note: The Device list is sortable by Name, Type, and IP.

Add - Auto upgrade with latest device firmware

General

Schedule

Task name

Select

Upgrade for

Selected device

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Name | Model | IP | Server | Description |
|--------------------------|---------------------|----------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00_PE7328J_Andrew_1 | PE7328J | 10.3.166.177 | 3700T-15243 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | KH1516Ai | KH1516Ai | | | KH1516Ai |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | KN4140VA_abc | KN4140VA | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | KN8164VV_abc | KN8164V | 10.3.166.252 | 3700T-15243 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | PE8316G2 | PE8316G2 | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | PE8324A | PE8324A | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | SN0108A_CCA | SN0108A | 10.3.167.205 | 3700T-15243 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | SN0148CO | SN0148CO | 10.3.167.203 | 3700T-15243 | abc |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | SN9116CO_CC | SN9116CO | 10.3.167.204 | 3700T-15243 | abc |

Next

Cancel

4. When finished, click **Next** for the Schedule page.

5. Make your schedule choices in the Schedule page.

Note: Refer to *Backup Primary Server Database* on page 187 as the schedule page is similar.

6. When finished, click **Add** to add the task.

Upgrade device firmware

This task allows you to schedule the device firmware upgrade from the firmware repository.

| Name | Model | IP | Server | Description |
|--------------|----------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| KN4140VA_abc | KN4140VA | | | |
| KN8164VV_abc | KN8164V | 10.3.166.252 | 3700T-15243 | |

1. Provide a name for the task.
2. Select the firmware file from the **Select firmware** drop-down menu. The firmware files are from the firmware repository.

After selecting a firmware file, clicking the information icon ⓘ will display the information of the firmware. An example is shown below:

| | |
|----------------|-------------|
| Description | kn |
| Firmware Type | Application |
| Date | 2019-04-25 |
| Firmware Ver. | V2.0.195 |
| Appliance Type | KN8164 |

3. Selecting a firmware file will display all the devices available for firmware upgrade in the table below.

4. Check the checkbox(es) of the device you wish to upgrade and click **Next**.
5. When finished, click **Next** for the Schedule page.
6. Make your schedule choices in the Schedule page.

Note: Refer to *Backup Primary Server Database* on page 187 as the schedule page is similar.

7. When finished, click **Add** to add the task.

Backup Device Configuration

When you choose the Backup device configuration task, the following page appears:

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Name | Type | IP | MAC | Server | Description |
|--------------------------|--------------|----------|--------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | KH1516Ai | KH1516Ai | | | | KH1516Ai |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | KN4140VA_abc | KN4140VA | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | KN8164VV_abc | KN8164V | 10.3.166.252 | 001074610891 | 3700T-15243 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | SN0108A_CCA | SN0108A | 10.3.167.205 | 00107448004e | 3700T-15243 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | SN0148CO | SN0148CO | 10.3.167.203 | 0010744800b2 | 3700T-15243 | abc |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | SN9116CO_CC | SN9116CO | 10.3.167.204 | 00107448008a | 3700T-15243 | abc |

1. Provide a name and a password for the task.

Note: Make a note of the password and store it in a safe place. You will need it when restoring the configuration. See *Restore Configuration*, page 122 for restoration details.

2. In the Device list, check the checkbox of the name of the device(s) you want to back up.
3. When finished, click **Next** for the Schedule page.

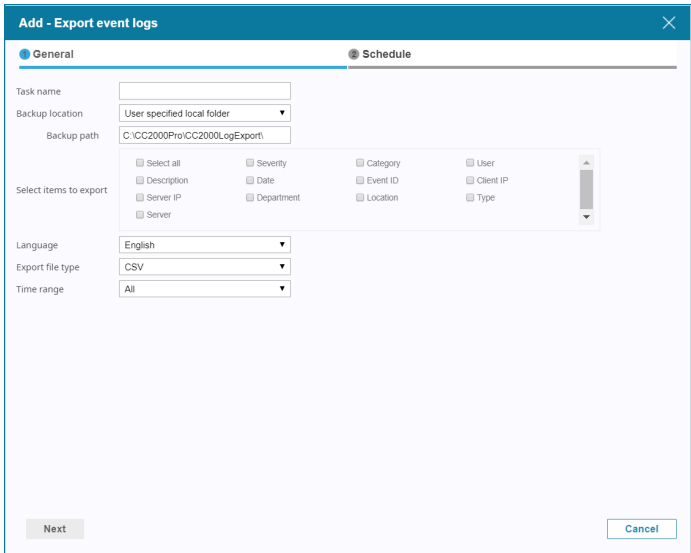
4. Make your schedule choices in the Schedule page.

Note: Refer to *Backup Primary Server Database* on page 187 as the schedule page is similar.

5. When finished, click **Add** to add the task.

Export Event Logs

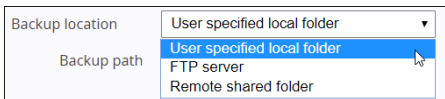
When you choose the Export event logs task, the following page appears:



1. Provide a name for the task in the Task name field.

Note: The Export event logs operation is performed on each server independently. To search a server's records you must look at its particular file. You can identify the file by means of the Task name you gave it.

2. Select the **Backup location** where you want to store the backup file in. There are three options to choose from, **User specified local folder**, **FTP server**, and **Remote shared folder**.



- ♦ The default setting is for the backup file to be stored in a local directory based on the directory that the CC2000 was installed in. For example, C:\CC2000\DataBaseBackup.
 - ♦ Fill in the rest of the fields if you choose FTP server or Remote shared folder.
3. In the Select items to export table, check to select an item(s) you want to include in the exported file.

Note: Check the Select all checkbox to select all items.

4. You can use the Language drop-down menu to select a different language.
5. In the Export file type drop-down menu, you can select your preferred export file type. If you choose one of the encryption options (Encrypt file with AES or Encrypt file with DES), key a password into the Password field that comes up.

Note: Make a note of the password – you will need it to import the file.

6. In the Time range drop-down menu, there are three options.
 - ♦ **All:** Exports all the records in the database.
 - ♦ **Since the last time task run:** Exports all the records of tasks since the last time they were ran.
 - ♦ **Select time range:** Export records for a particular time and period, set the time parameters with the From and To fields.
7. When finished, click **Next** for the Schedule page.
8. Make your schedule choices in the Schedule page.

Note: Refer to *Backup Primary Server Database* on page 187 as the schedule page is similar.

9. When finished, click **Add** to add the task.

Export Device Logs

The CC2000 also acts as a log server for all ATEN/Altusen devices where CC2000 records the system events that take place on the devices in a database. This task allows you to export the recordings of the device database as a file. When you choose the Export device logs task, the following page appears:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add - Export device logs" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It has two tabs: "General" (selected) and "Schedule". The "General" tab contains the following fields:

- Task name: A text input field.
- Backup location: A dropdown menu with "User specified local folder" selected.
- Backup path: A text input field containing "C:\CC2000Pro\CC2000LogExport\".
- Keyword: A text input field.
- Export file type: A dropdown menu with "CSV" selected.
- Time range: A dropdown menu with "All" selected.

At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: "Next" on the left and "Cancel" on the right.

1. Provide an appropriate name for the task. For example, if you want to export the device log for all devices you could name the task All-device-logs; if you want to export the device log for CN8000 devices on a weekly basis, you could name the task cn8000-weekly-device-log.

Note: The Export device logs operation is performed and stored on each server independently. To search the records you must go to each server to look at its particular file.

2. Select the **Backup location** where you want to store the backup file in. There are three options to choose from, **User specified local folder**, **FTP server**, and **Remote shared folder**.

The screenshot shows a close-up of the "Backup location" dropdown menu. The menu is open, showing three options: "User specified local folder" (highlighted in blue), "FTP server", and "Remote shared folder". A mouse cursor is pointing at the "User specified local folder" option.

- ◆ The default setting is for the backup file to be stored in a local directory based on the directory that the CC2000 was installed in. For example, C : \CC2000\DataBaseBackup.
 - ◆ Fill in the rest of the fields if you choose FTP server or Remote shared folder.
3. You can use the Keyword field as a filter to limit the scope of the log file. For example, to export a file that only contains event information for

CN8000 devices and all your CN8000 devices had CN8K as part of their names, you could key CN8K into the Keyword field.

4. In the Export file type drop-down menu, you can select your preferred export file type. If you choose one of the encryption options (Encrypt file with AES or Encrypt file with DES), key a password into the Password field that comes up.

Note: Make a note of the password – you will need it to import the file.

5. In the Time range drop-down menu, there are three options.
 - ♦ **All:** Exports all the records in the database.
 - ♦ **Since the last time task run:** Exports all the records of tasks since the last time they were ran.
 - ♦ **Include:** Export records for a particular time period, set the time parameters with the From and To fields.
 - ♦ **Exclude:** Export all records but exclude the records in the time period specified here. Set the time parameters in the From and To fields.
6. When finished, click **Next** for the Schedule page.
7. Make your schedule choices in the Schedule page.

Note: Refer to *Backup Primary Server Database* on page 187 as the schedule page is similar.

8. When finished, click **Add** to add the task.
9. When you have finished with this page, click **Next** at the bottom-left of the panel for the Schedule page.
10. Make your schedule choices in the Schedule page that comes up.

Note: The schedule choices are similar to the ones described for the *Backup Primary server database* task.

11. When you have finished making your schedule choices, click **Add**.

Export serial console history

The CC2000 keeps a record of all user sessions that take place (see page 211). This function lets you save the serial console history of each device and export as a file(s). When you choose the Export serial console history task, the following page appears:

Add - Export serial console history

General | Schedule

Task name:

Backup location:

Backup path:

Export file type:

Time range:

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Name | Type | IP | MAC | Server | Description |
|--------------------------|----------|----------|--------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | SN0148CO | SN0148CO | 10.3.167.203 | 0010744800b2 | 3700T-15243 | abc |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | COM1 | SN0148CO | 10.3.167.203 | 0010744800b2 | 3700T-15243 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | COM2 | SN0148CO | 10.3.167.203 | 0010744800b2 | 3700T-15243 | |

1. Provide a name for the task.
2. Select the **Backup location** where you want to store the backup file in. There are three options to choose from, **User specified local folder**, **FTP server**, and **Remote shared folder**.

Backup location:

Backup path:

FTP server

Remote shared folder

- ♦ The default setting is for the backup file to be stored in a local directory based on the directory that the CC2000 was installed in. For example, C:\CC2000\DataBaseBackup.
 - ♦ Fill in the rest of the fields if you choose FTP server or Remote shared folder.
3. In the Export file type drop-down menu, you can select your preferred export file type. If you choose one of the encryption options (Encrypt file

with AES or Encrypt file with DES), key a password into the Password field that comes up.

Note: Make a note of the password – you will need it to import the file.

4. In the Time range drop-down menu, there are three options.
 - ♦ **All:** Exports all the records in the database.
 - ♦ **Include:** Export records for a particular time period, set the time parameters with the From and To fields.
 - ♦ **Exclude:** Export all records but exclude the records in the time period specified here. Set the time parameters in the From and To fields.
5. For the device list, check the checkbox of the desired device(s), or check the checkbox in front of Name at the top of the column to select all of them.

Note: If you prefer to only export the serial console history for selected ports, instead of clicking the device's checkbox, click the arrowhead in front of the device's name to expand the port list and click to select the ports.

6. When finished, click **Next** for the Schedule page.
7. Make your schedule choices in the Schedule page.

Note: Refer to *Backup Primary Server Database* on page 187 as the schedule page is similar.

8. When finished, click **Add** to add the task.

Editing a Task

There are two categories you can edit: changing a task's General settings and its Schedule settings.

To edit a task, do the following:

1. In the Task Manager list, check the checkbox of the task you want to edit.
2. Click **Edit**. An example is shown:

Edit - (kn8)

General | **Schedule**

Task name:

Select firmware:

☐ Check firmware file version

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Name | Model | IP | Server | Description |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|----------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | ▶ KN4140VA_abc | KN4140VA | | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | ▶ KN8164VV_abc | KN8164V | 10.3.166.252 | 3700T-15243 | |

For the different tasks and the editable parameters, refer to *Add* on page 186 for more information.

After editing the parameters, click **Save** to finish.

Run Now

Use **Run Now** to immediately execute the task. Check the checkbox of the task and click **Run Now**.

Deleting a Task

Use **Delete** to delete a task(s). Check the checkbox of the task and click **Delete**.

Replicate Database

The Task Manager page for a Secondary server is similar to that of a Primary server, except that it has a pre-configured default entry, Replicate Database, that replicates its database on the Primary it is connected to:

The screenshot shows the 'Task Manager' window. At the top, there are buttons for 'Add', 'Edit', 'Run Now', and 'Delete', along with a search bar and a filter icon. Below these is a table with the following data:

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Name ↕ | Type ↕ | Next Run ↕ | Last Run ↕ | Status ↕ |
|--------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Replicate databases | Database replication | 2019-05-30 23:59:00 | 2019-05-29 23:59:00 | Idle |

When you check the checkbox Replicate Database and click Edit, the Edit page comes up. The procedures are similar to the ones described for the Editing a task. Refer back to page 200 for details, if necessary.

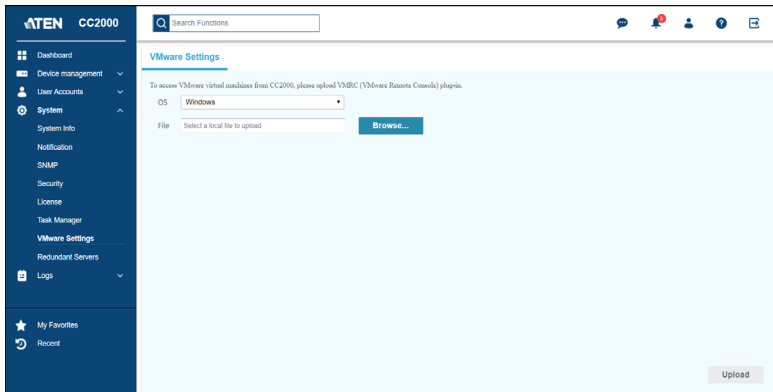
-
- Note:**
1. Each CC2000 server maintains its own individual database of the accounts, logs, devices, and access rights that are configured on it. By replicating, it sends all that information to be incorporated into the Primary's database and made available to the rest of the CC2000 management system.
 2. When the Secondary registers with a Primary, its database is automatically replicated.
 3. The default is for the database to be automatically replicated once a day at 00:00. You can use this page to change the replication schedule, but be aware that setting the replication schedule to too small of a time interval can adversely influence system performance. If you set the schedule to too large of an interval, there can be a long time period when the databases don't match.
-

When you have made the schedule choices you want, click **Save**.

VMware Settings

VMRC Plugin

The VMware Remote Console (VMRC) plugin lets you access a VMware virtual machine from within the browser. You will need to install this plugin if you have added a VMware virtual machine to your CC2000 management system. When you select the VMware Settings Panel Menu entry, a page similar to the one below appears:



To install the plugin, do the following:

1. Download the plugin from the VMware website.
2. Use the OS drop-down menu to select the operating system.
3. Click **Browse** to select the file downloaded in step one.
4. Click the **Upload** button.

Installing Xterm

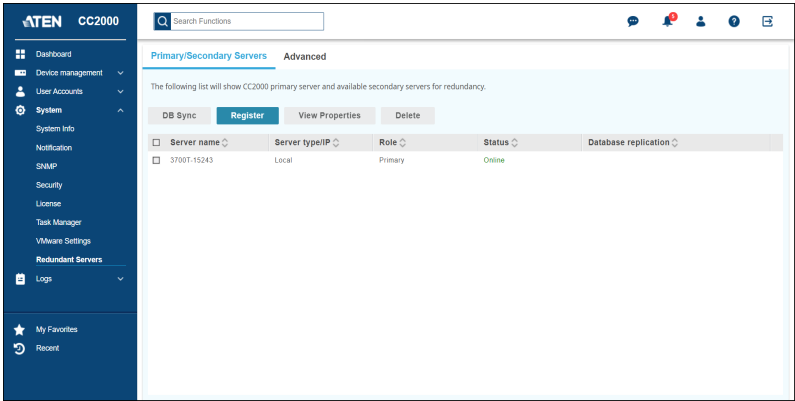
If the operating system of the port you are accessing is running Ubuntu 18.04_x64, CentOS 7.5_x64, or Debian 9.5_x64, you must install Xterm to run VMRC properly.

On terminal, run the following commands:

```
sudo apt-get update
sudo apt-get install xterm
```

Redundant Servers

The **Redundant Servers** menu offers two tab menu choices: **Primary/Secondary Servers**, and **Advanced**. The default Redundant Servers page is **Primary/Secondary Servers**, and it looks similar to the one below:



Primary/Secondary Servers

The Interactive Display Panel provides a table listing the CC2000 servers, along with some basic information about them. A green online in the status means that the server is currently accessible. A red offline in the status means that it is not currently accessible.

The definitions of the Server table headings are given below:

| Heading | Meaning |
|-----------------|---|
| Server Name | The name given to the server when it was installed. |
| Server Type /IP | <i>Local</i> indicates the CC2000 that you have logged into. For other CC2000s on the installation, the term <i>Remote</i> and the CC2000's IP address appears. |

| Heading | Meaning |
|---------|---|
| Role | <p>The two major roles in the CC2000 management system are Primary and Secondary. In addition, there is a third role, <i>Substitute Primary</i>, in which one of the Secondaries temporarily takes over the Primary's role should the Primary become disconnected from the system (due to network problems, for example). The substitute Primary returns to its Secondary status when the Primary comes back on line.</p> <p>Note: 1. The CC2000 that acts as the Substitute Primary is automatically chosen by the CC2000 management system. The choice is based on the CC2000 registration sequence (the earliest CC2000 to register with the Primary becomes the substitute Primary).</p> <p>2. The substitute Primary performs the Primary's role in regard to providing centralized management control – it cannot be used to add or delete devices; it can not register Secondary servers; Secondaries cannot replicate their databases to the substitute Primary.</p> |
| Status | Indicates whether the CC2000 is online or offline |

View Properties

To view the properties of each server, check the checkbox of the server you want to view and click **View Properties**.

View properties

Server Information

Name

3700T-15243

Description

Role

Primary

Network settings

IP address

Local

HTTPS port

8443

CC2000 port

8001

Proxy port

Disabled

Server IP list

Network interface 1:

10.3.167.235

Network interface 2:

fe80:0:0:24a0:1f72:3e5:38b0

Close

Register

The **Register** button is used to integrate a CC2000 server as a Secondary into a larger CC2000 network. Click **Register** for the following page.

A screenshot of a 'Register' dialog box. The dialog has a blue title bar with the word 'Register' and a close button (X). Inside, there are four labeled text input fields: 'Primary server IP' with 'IP' as placeholder text, 'Primary server HTTPS port' with 'HTTPS port' as placeholder text, 'Administrator username' with 'username' as placeholder text, and 'Administrator password' with 'password' as placeholder text. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Register' (disabled, grey) and 'Cancel' (active, blue).

Fill in the details of the primary server and click **Register**.

After the registration completes, you are automatically logged out. When you log back in, your server now appears as a Secondary on the Primary's installation.

-
- Note:**
1. For the *Administrator username* and *Administrator password* fields, you must use a valid Super Administrator's or System Administrator's username and password.
 2. After registration, most of the original data on the formerly independent CC2000 (Primary or Secondary) is lost. As a Secondary server, it will now get almost all of its data from the Primary server it is registered with. Any devices that are connected to the newly registered Secondary have to be added again.
 3. Users logged into other CC2000 servers on the installation may not see your CC2000 right away. Refreshing the page may be needed such as leaving the System Management page and come back to it again.
 4. In some cases, you may have to clear your browser cache in order to see the change.
-

Primary Server View

Primary/Secondary Servers

Advanced

The following list will show CC2000 primary server and available secondary servers for redundancy.

DB Sync

Register

View Properties

Delete

| <input type="checkbox"/> Server name | Server type/IP | Role | Status |
|--|----------------------|-----------|--------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> CAT-JessieL32 | Local | Primary | Online |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ubuntu1604 | Remote / 10.0.92.168 | Secondary | Online |
| <input type="checkbox"/> WIN-OM2T7J7TL9F | Remote / 10.0.92.20 | Secondary | Online |

To delete a secondary server(s), check the checkbox of the secondary server(s) and click **Delete**.

To synchronize primary server database to a secondary server(s), check the secondary server(s) and click **DB Sync**.

Secondary Server View

Primary/Secondary Servers

Advanced

The following list will show CC2000 primary server and available secondary servers for redundancy.

Promote Role

Register

View Properties

Primary Server

| No. | Server name | Server type/IP | Role | Status |
|-----|-----------------|----------------------|-----------|--------|
| 1 | CAT-JessieL32 | Remote / 10.0.92.84 | Primary | Online |
| 2 | ubuntu1604 | Remote / 10.0.92.168 | Secondary | Online |
| 3 | WIN-OM2T7J7TL9F | Local | Secondary | Online |

■ Promote

The **Promote** button is used to transform a Secondary CC2000 to a Primary. When you click this button, the change takes place automatically with the former Primary now becoming a Secondary and all other online Secondaries automatically recognizing the new Primary.

Note: 1. To see the newest changes, refresh the page such as going to a different page and come back.

2. We recommend that all CC2000 servers on the installation be online at the time of role promotion. If any Secondaries are offline at the time of role promotion, they must perform the Primary Settings procedure again. (See *Primary Server*, page 207, for details.) If the old Primary is offline at the time of role promotion, it must Register with the new Primary when it comes back on line. See *Register* on page 205 for details.
-

■ Primary Server

This function is used under the following conditions:

- ♦ If the Primary's IP address changes.
- ♦ If the Secondary is offline at the time the Primary's CC Port or HTTPS Port changes.
- ♦ If the Secondary is offline at the time that a different CC2000 is promoted from Secondary to Primary.

When these situations occur, there is no need to go through the *Register* procedure to maintain the Primary/Secondary connection. The administrator can use this function to update the information accordingly.

To maintain the connection, simply key in the new IP address and/or port settings (of the Primary Server) and click **Save**.

-
- Note:**
1. Since the IP address change is made at the OS level (not the CC2000 service level), the CC2000 system is unaware of the change. Therefore Primary can't change this information on the Secondaries automatically. It must be done manually on all Secondaries.
 2. Any CC2000 Secondary that is offline will not be automatically notified at the time of change, therefore this procedure must be performed at the time the Secondary comes back on line.
 3. This procedure allows any changes in the database that occurred when the Secondary was not in communication with the Primary to be merged into a common database. This is preferable for CC2000s that were originally part of the same system but temporarily lost communication with each other. Using this function would prevent losing any updated database information it added while it was separated from the primary server.
-

Advanced

The Advanced tab offers four setting categories: Login policy, Lockout policy, User role restriction policy and Power control.

Primary/Secondary Servers **Advanced**

Login policy

☐ Restrict users to login the same account once at a time

Lockout policy

☒ Lockout users after invalid login attempts.

Maximum login failures

Timeout minutes(s)

☐ Require manual unlock

User role restriction policy

☒ No restriction for "UserGroup management" role

☐ Restrict system management roles (1-2)

☐ Restrict system and user management roles (1-5)

☐ Restrict all roles (1-9)

Power control

☐ Force to confirm all power operation

☒ Enable power control for servers

Save Discard

Login policy

Check the Restrict users to login in the same account once a a time checkbox if you don't want users to be able to log in more than once at the same time.

Note: Default setting for Login policy allows users to be able to log in with the same account more than once at a time.

Lockout Policy

- ♦ To lock users out after a specified number of failed login attempts, check the checkbox in front of Lockout users after invalid login attempts to enable the lockout function. The default is enabled.

Note: If you don't check this box, users can attempt to log in an unlimited number of times with no restrictions. For security purposes, we recommend that you enable the lockout policy.

- ♦ Key the number of login failures you wish to allow before the user gets locked out in the *Maximum login failures* field. The value specified here must be at least 1. The default is 5.

- ♦ Key the amount of time (in minutes) a locked out user must wait before being allowed to log in again in the *Timeout* field. The value specified here must be at least 1. The default is 30.
- ♦ Enabling Require manual unlock, means that users will not be able to log in after their account has been locked until they contact an administrator to have the administrator manually unlock the account. See *Unblock User*, page 138, for details. The default is disabled (no check in the checkbox).

User role restriction policy

This setting category allows an administrator to create user accounts with either no role restrictions or with one of three pre-set role restriction policies. Options are as follows:

- ♦ No role restrictions
- ♦ Restrict system management roles (1–2)
- ♦ Restrict system and user management roles (1–5)
- ♦ Restrict all roles (1–9)

Note: For full details of roles 1–9, please see the table under *System User Types*, page 140.

Power control

This setting category allows an administrator to set power control over devices and servers for users.

Enabling Force to confirm all power operation, means the users are forced to make power operation confirmation on all the connected devices regardless of the setting on the outlet.

Enabling Enable power control for servers, means if the third-party servers that supports power control, is allowed to perform power controls. Otherwise, the related power control will be removed from the menu.

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

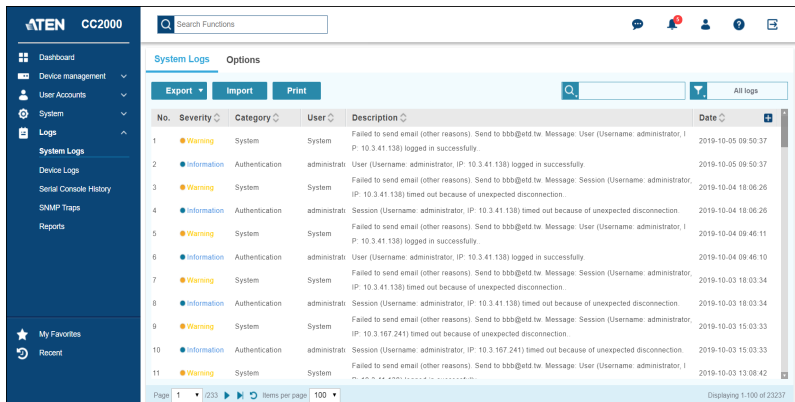
Chapter 8

Logs

Overview

The CC2000 keeps an extensive record of all the transactions that take place on its installation. The Logs page provides a powerful array of filters and functions that allow you to view and export the log file data, as well as be informed by email of specified events as they occur.

When you click the Logs menu, the CC2000 directs you to the System Logs page which looks similar to the page:



| No. | Severity | Category | User | Description | Date |
|-----|-------------|----------------|-------------|--|---------------------|
| 1 | Warning | System | System | Failed to send email (other reasons). Send to bbb@eld.hw Message: User (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) logged in successfully. | 2019-10-05 09:50:37 |
| 2 | Information | Authentication | administrat | User (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) logged in successfully. | 2019-10-05 09:50:37 |
| 3 | Warning | System | System | Failed to send email (other reasons). Send to bbb@eld.hw Message: Session (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) timed out because of unexpected disconnection. | 2019-10-04 18:06:26 |
| 4 | Information | Authentication | administrat | Session (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) timed out because of unexpected disconnection. | 2019-10-04 18:06:26 |
| 5 | Warning | System | System | Failed to send email (other reasons). Send to bbb@eld.hw Message: User (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) logged in successfully. | 2019-10-04 09:46:11 |
| 6 | Information | Authentication | administrat | User (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) logged in successfully. | 2019-10-04 09:46:10 |
| 7 | Warning | System | System | Failed to send email (other reasons). Send to bbb@eld.hw Message: Session (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) timed out because of unexpected disconnection. | 2019-10-03 18:03:34 |
| 8 | Information | Authentication | administrat | Session (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) timed out because of unexpected disconnection. | 2019-10-03 18:03:34 |
| 9 | Warning | System | System | Failed to send email (other reasons). Send to bbb@eld.hw Message: Session (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.167.241) timed out because of unexpected disconnection. | 2019-10-03 15:03:33 |
| 10 | Information | Authentication | administrat | Session (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.167.241) timed out because of unexpected disconnection. | 2019-10-03 15:03:33 |
| 11 | Warning | System | System | Failed to send email (other reasons). Send to bbb@eld.hw Message: User (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) logged in successfully. | 2019-10-03 13:06:42 |

System Logs

The System Logs menu offers two tab menu choices: System Logs and Options.

System Logs

The System Logs tab is the default page and it looks similar to the one below:

| No. | Severity | Category | User | Description | Date |
|-----|-------------|----------------|-------------|--|---------------------|
| 1 | Warning | System | System | Failed to send email (other reasons): Send to bbb@eld hw Message: User (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) logged in successfully. | 2019-10-05 09:50:37 |
| 2 | Information | Authentication | administrat | User (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) logged in successfully. | 2019-10-05 09:50:37 |
| 3 | Warning | System | System | Failed to send email (other reasons): Send to bbb@eld hw Message: Session (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) timed out because of unexpected disconnection. | 2019-10-04 18:06:26 |
| 4 | Information | Authentication | administrat | Session (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) timed out because of unexpected disconnection. | 2019-10-04 18:06:26 |
| 5 | Warning | System | System | Failed to send email (other reasons): Send to bbb@eld hw Message: User (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) logged in successfully. | 2019-10-04 09:46:11 |
| 6 | Information | Authentication | administrat | User (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) logged in successfully. | 2019-10-04 09:46:10 |
| 7 | Warning | System | System | Failed to send email (other reasons): Send to bbb@eld hw Message: Session (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) timed out because of unexpected disconnection. | 2019-10-03 18:03:34 |
| 8 | Information | Authentication | administrat | Session (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) timed out because of unexpected disconnection. | 2019-10-03 18:03:34 |
| 9 | Warning | System | System | Failed to send email (other reasons): Send to bbb@eld hw Message: Session (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.167.241) timed out because of unexpected disconnection. | 2019-10-03 15:03:33 |
| 10 | Information | Authentication | administrat | Session (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.167.241) timed out because of unexpected disconnection. | 2019-10-03 15:03:33 |
| 11 | Warning | System | System | Failed to send email (other reasons): Send to bbb@eld hw Message: User (Username: administrator, IP: 10.3.41.138) logged in successfully. | 2019-10-03 13:08:42 |

- ♦ The default layout shows information concerning all of the events that have taken place on all the logs on the entire CC2000 installation, displayed in reverse chronological order.
- ♦ The sort order of the list can be changed by clicking the column headings.
 - ♦ Clicking the Date column heading changes the sorting order between standard and reverse chronological order.
 - ♦ Clicking the Description column heading changes the sorting order between standard and reverse alphabetical order.

Note: In general, a blank page, indicates that there were no log events recorded for that category.

Export

The Export button offers three options: Logs in current page, All logs, and Custom logs.

■ Logs in current page

Select **Logs in current page** to automatically download all the logged event records of current system logs page.

Note: The amount of logs downloaded for Logs in current page is determined by Items per page drop-down menu.

■ All logs

Select **All logs** to automatically download all of the logged event records from the system logs.

■ Custom logs

The Custom Logs page is used to save specified logged event records to a file. When you click **Custom logs**, a page similar to the one below appears:

Custom logs

All

☐ Select all
 ☒ User
 ☐ Event ID
 ☐ Department
 ☐ Server

☒ Severity
 ☒ Description
 ☐ Client IP
 ☐ Location

☒ Category
 ☒ Date
 ☐ Server IP
 ☐ Type

Log info:

Language: English

File type: CSV

From: First event

To: Last event

Export

Cancel

213

To save specified logged events to a file, do the following:

1. Select the log info item(s) that you want to include in the exported file in the **Log info** table.

Note: Severity, Category, User, Description, and Date are enabled as default.

2. Use the drop-down menu **Language** for a list of languages offered if you prefer a different language, English is default. Select and confirm to have the file exported in the language that your set to.
3. Use the drop-down menu **File type** to select your preferred export file type. If you choose one of the encryption options (Encrypt file with AES or Encrypt file with DES), key a password into the Password field that comes up.

Note: Make a note of the password – you will need it to import the file.

4. Set the time parameters with the **From** and **To** fields to export logged event records for a particular time period.
5. When you have finished with this page, click **Export** at the bottom-right of the panel.

Import

The Import page is used to open previously saved log files for viewing. When you click **Import**, a page similar to the one below appears:

The screenshot shows a web-based dialog box titled "Import file". It contains the following elements:

- Import file** section:
 - Log file: Select a local file to upload (with a "Browse..." button).
- Password:** section:
 - Password: (text input field).
- System logs:** section:
 - (Large empty text area for log content).
- Bottom right buttons: "Import" and "Cancel".

To import a previously saved log file, do the following:

1. Either key in the full path to the file in the **Log file** field, or click **Browse** to navigate to it.
2. If the file has been encrypted, key the password that was used when it was created into the **Password** field.
3. Click **Import** at the bottom-right of the panel.

When the file is imported, its contents appear in the System logs main page.

Print

To print out the Log list, select **Print**.

Note: Only the list that is displayed (all, or a filtered choice) is printed.

| Log | | | | | | | Total: 8 |
|-------------------------|---------------------|----------|----------------|--------|---|--|--|
| No. | Date | Severity | Category | User | Description | | |
| 1 | 2018-05-15 17:25:12 | Critical | Authentication | net122 | User (Customer: net122, IP: 10.0.174.21) has been locked out due to the system lock-out policy. | | |
| 2 | 2018-05-15 17:25:44 | Critical | Authentication | net123 | User (Customer: net123, IP: 10.0.174.21) has been locked out due to the system lock-out policy. | | |
| 3 | 2018-05-15 17:32:18 | Critical | Authentication | wwwww | User (Customer: wwwwww, IP: 10.0.0.47) 256 has been locked out due to the system lock-out policy. | | |
| 4 | 2018-05-15 17:48:29 | Critical | Authentication | wwwww | User (Customer: wwwwww, IP: 10.0.0.47) 100 has been locked out due to the system lock-out policy. | | |
| 5 | 2018-05-15 17:48:43 | Critical | Authentication | g23 | User (Customer: 123, IP: 10.0.0.47) 100 has been locked out due to the system lock-out policy. | | |
| Operator: administrator | | | | | | | Print Date: Wed May 29 17:46:40 CST 2019 |

Options

The Options page gives you control over system log file's Retention Policy. When you select Options, a page similar to the one below appears:

ATEN CC2000

Search Functions

- Dashboard
- Device management
- User Accounts
- System
- Logs
- System Logs
- Device Logs
- Serial Console History
- SNMP Traps
- Reports
- My Favorites
- Recent

System Logs Options

Retention Policy

The maximum number of logs

Delete logs older than (days)

| Event | System Log | Syslog | SNMP Trap |
|--------------------------|---|---|---|
| System events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all system events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all system events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all system events |
| Authentication events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all authentication events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all authentication events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all authentication events |
| User management events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all user management events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all user management events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all user management events |
| Device management events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all device management events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all device management events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all device management events |
| System task events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all system task events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all system task events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all system task events |
| Device events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all device events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all device events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all device events |
| Device traps events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all device trap events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all device trap events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all device trap events |

Save Discard

To control your system log file's Retention Policy, do the following:

1. For the Retention Policy, click on the radio button to select between **The maximum number of logs** and **Delete logs older than** options.
 - ♦ Select **The maximum number of logs** if you want to maintain the log database on a log records basis.
 - ♦ Select **Delete logs older than** if you want to maintain the log database on a days basis.

Note:


- ♦ When the number of days and records is reached, events are discarded on a “first in first out” basis.
- ♦ The valid range for number of logs is from 10,000 - 1,000,000 logs.
- ♦ The valid range for number of days is from 30 - 1096 days.

2. For Event, it lets you select which events you want to track, and whether to record them in the System Log, Syslog, SNMP Trap, or all. Check the checkbox of the event name you want to enable.
 - ♦ There are 7 event categories and each category contains a list of separate events. To record all of the events for a category, check the checkbox in front of the **Enable all ... events** entry. Below is an example.

The screenshot shows the 'System Logs' configuration page with the 'Options' tab selected. Under 'Retention Policy', there are two radio buttons: 'The maximum number of logs' (selected) with a value of 100000, and 'Delete logs older than' with a value of 180 days. Below this is a table for 'Event' configuration. The table has columns for 'System Log', 'Syslog', and 'SNMP Trap'. The 'Syslog' column is highlighted with a red box. The table lists several event categories and their sub-events, each with checkboxes for enabling or disabling them. The 'Enable all authentication events' checkbox in the Syslog column is checked and highlighted with a red box. The 'Save' and 'Discard' buttons are at the bottom right.

| Event | System Log | Syslog | SNMP Trap |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Authentication events | | | |
| Enable all authentication events | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| User lockout | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| User login failure | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| System session ended | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| User login | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| User logout | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Session timeout | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Disconnection | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| End session | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| User management events | | | |
| Enable all user management events | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Device management events | | | |
| Enable all device management event | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| System task events | | | |
| Enable all system task events | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Device events | | | |
| Enable all device events | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Device traps events | | | |
| Enable all device trap events | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- ♦ To only record selected events for a category rather than all of them, click the arrowhead in front of the category name to open the list of events, then check or uncheck each event.

| Event  | <input type="checkbox"/> System Log | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Syslog | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SNMP Trap |
|---|---|--|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> System events | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable all system events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all system events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all system events |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Authentication events | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable all authentication events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all authentication events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all authentication events |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User management events | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable all user management events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all user management events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all user management events |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Device management events | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable all device management event | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all device management event | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all device management event |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> System task events | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable all system task events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all system task events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all system task events |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Device events | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable all device events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all device events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all device events |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Device traps events | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable all device trap events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all device trap events | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable all device trap events |

3. When you have finished with this page, click **Save** at the bottom-right of the panel.

Device Logs

The CC2000 acts as a log server for all ATEN/Altusen devices, recording the system events that take place on those devices in a database.

The Device Logs menu offers two tab menu choices: Device Logs and Options.

Device Logs

The Device Logs is the default page, and it looks similar to the one below:

| No. | Severity | Device Name | IP | Description | Date |
|-----|-------------|-------------|--------------|--|---------------------|
| 1 | Information | CN8600_131 | 10.3.167.131 | OP: User Snapshot logged in | 2019-10-03 09:59:16 |
| 2 | Information | CN8600_121 | 10.3.167.121 | OP: User Snapshot logged in | 2019-10-03 09:59:16 |
| 3 | Information | CN8600_131 | 10.3.167.131 | OP: User Snapshot (10.3.167.235) attempting to login | 2019-10-03 09:59:16 |
| 4 | Information | CN8600_121 | 10.3.167.121 | OP: User Snapshot (10.3.167.235) attempting to login | 2019-10-03 09:59:16 |
| 5 | Information | CN8600_131 | 10.3.167.131 | SYS: Access via windows client 10.3.167.235 | 2019-10-03 09:59:16 |
| 6 | Information | CN8600_121 | 10.3.167.121 | SYS: Access via windows client 10.3.167.235 | 2019-10-03 09:59:16 |
| 7 | Information | CN8600_131 | 10.3.167.131 | SYS: Connected to 10.3.167.235 (74-D4-35-F3-CF-55) | 2019-10-03 09:59:16 |
| 8 | Information | CN8600_121 | 10.3.167.121 | SYS: Connected to 10.3.167.235 (74-D4-35-F3-CF-55) | 2019-10-03 09:59:16 |
| 9 | Information | CN8600_131 | 10.3.167.131 | OP: User Snapshot (10.3.167.235) logged out: Online time : 2D 00H:52 M:48S | 2019-10-03 09:59:16 |
| 10 | Information | CN8600_121 | 10.3.167.121 | OP: User Snapshot logged in | 2019-10-03 09:58:52 |
| 11 | Information | CN8600_121 | 10.3.167.121 | OP: User Snapshot (10.3.167.235) attempting to login | 2019-10-03 09:58:52 |
| 12 | Information | CN8600_121 | 10.3.167.121 | SYS: Access via windows client 10.3.167.235 | 2019-10-03 09:58:52 |
| 13 | Information | CN8600_121 | 10.3.167.121 | SYS: Connected to 10.3.167.235 (74-D4-35-F3-CF-55) | 2019-10-03 09:58:52 |
| | | | | OP: User administrator from 10.3.167.241 (84-8F-89-F7-65-A0) attempt | |

- ◆ The default layout shows log information for all of the devices on the entire CC2000 installation displayed in reverse chronological order.
- ◆ The sort order of the list can be changed by clicking the column headings.
 - ◆ Clicking the Date column heading changes the sorting order between standard and reverse chronological order.
 - ◆ Clicking the Description column heading changes the sorting order between standard and reverse alphabetical order.

Note: In general, a blank page, indicates that there were no log events recorded for that category.

Export

The Export tab offers two panel submenus, Logs in current page, and All logs.

■ Logs in current page

Select **Logs in current page** to automatically download all the logged event records of current system logs page.

Note: The amount of logs downloaded for Logs in current page is determined by Items per page drop-down menu.

■ All logs

Select **All logs** to automatically download all of the logged event records from the system logs.

■ Print

To print out the Device Log list, select **Print**.

Note: Only the list that is displayed (all, or a filtered choice) is printed.

Device Log

Total: 13

| S# | Date | Severity | Device Name | IP | Description |
|----|---------------------|----------|-------------|--------------|---|
| 1 | 2019-05-24 11:17:32 | Warning | SN0118CO_CC | 10.3.187.204 | NTP server connection failed (Server: 10.3.187.245) |
| 2 | 2019-05-24 10:17:33 | Warning | SN0118CO_CC | 10.3.187.204 | NTP server connection failed (Server: 10.3.187.245) |
| 3 | 2019-05-24 09:17:33 | Warning | SN0118CO_CC | 10.3.187.204 | NTP server connection failed (Server: 10.3.187.245) |
| 4 | 2019-05-24 08:17:32 | Warning | SN0118CO_CC | 10.3.187.204 | NTP server connection failed (Server: 10.3.187.245) |
| 5 | 2019-05-24 07:17:31 | Warning | SN0118CO_CC | 10.3.187.204 | NTP server connection failed (Server: 10.3.187.245) |
| 6 | 2019-05-24 06:17:31 | Warning | SN0118CO_CC | 10.3.187.204 | NTP server connection failed (Server: 10.3.187.245) |
| 7 | 2019-05-24 05:17:32 | Warning | SN0118CO_CC | 10.3.187.204 | NTP server connection failed (Server: 10.3.187.245) |
| 8 | 2019-05-24 04:17:32 | Warning | SN0118CO_CC | 10.3.187.204 | NTP server connection failed (Server: 10.3.187.245) |
| 9 | 2019-05-24 03:17:31 | Warning | SN0118CO_CC | 10.3.187.204 | NTP server connection failed (Server: 10.3.187.245) |
| 10 | 2019-05-24 02:17:31 | Warning | SN0118CO_CC | 10.3.187.204 | NTP server connection failed (Server: 10.3.187.245) |
| 11 | 2019-05-24 01:17:32 | Warning | SN0118CO_CC | 10.3.187.204 | NTP server connection failed (Server: 10.3.187.245) |
| 12 | 2019-05-24 00:17:31 | Warning | SN0118CO_CC | 10.3.187.204 | NTP server connection failed (Server: 10.3.187.245) |
| 13 | 2019-05-23 23:17:31 | Warning | SN0118CO_CC | 10.3.187.204 | NTP server connection failed (Server: 10.3.187.245) |

Operator: administrator

Print Date: Wed May 29 20:19:56 CST 2019

PrintClose

Options

The Options page gives you control over device log file's Retention Policy. When you select Options, a page similar to the one below appears:

Device LogsOptions

Retention Policy

☒ The maximum number of logs

☐ Delete logs older than

(days)

☒ Send device logs to Syslog server

To control your device log file's Retention Policy, do the following:

1. For the Retention Policy, click on the radio button to select between **The maximum number of logs** and **Delete logs older than** options.
 - ♦ Select **The maximum number of logs** if you want to maintain the log database on a log records basis.
 - ♦ Select **Delete logs older than** if you want to maintain the log database on a days basis.

Note:

- ♦ When the number of days and records is reached, events are discarded on a “first in first out” basis.
- ♦ The valid range for number of logs is from 10000 - 1,000,000 logs.
- ♦ The valid range for number of days is from 30 - 1096 days.

2. Check the checkbox of the **Send device logs to Syslog server** to enable Syslog function. When enabled, the CC2000 will send Device logs to Syslog server.

Note: CC2000 sets enable Send device logs to Syslog as default.

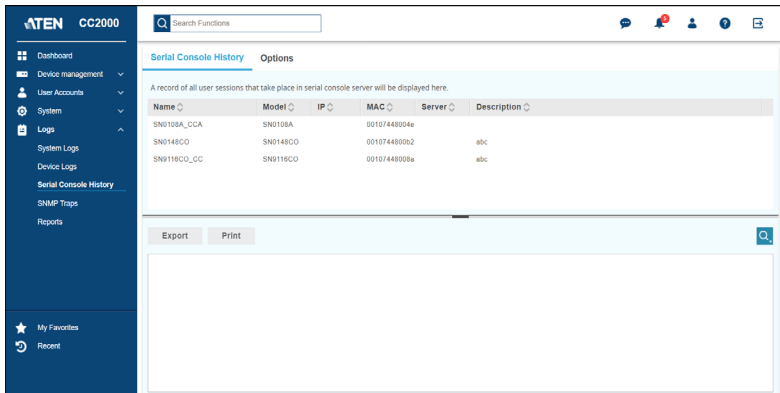
3. When you have finished with this page, click **Save** at the bottom-right of the page.

Serial Console History

The CC2000 keeps a record of all user sessions that take place in serial console server and display them. The Serial Console History menu offers two Panel Menu choices, Serial Console History, and Options.

Serial Console History

The Serial Console History is the default page, and it looks similar to the one below:



- ♦ The sort order of the Serial Console History list can be changed by clicking the column headings.
 - ♦ Clicking the Name column heading changes the sorting order between standard and reverse chronological order.
 - ♦ Clicking the Description column heading changes the sorting order between standard and reverse alphabetical order.

To search the Serial Console History records, do the following:

1. Click to choose a Model first then click the search icon, a page similar to the one below appears:

Serial Console History Options

A record of all user sessions that take place in serial console server will be displayed here.

| Name | Model | IP | MAC | Server | Description |
|----------|----------|--------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| SN0148CO | SN0148CO | 10.3.167.203 | 0010744800b2 | 3700T-15243 | 11 |

COM1 Export Print

asdfghjkl
asdasdasdasd
dasda
q
w
sfsadf212fv4556dasdf40a5621a3ef12e56fwe4ffasdf5g565asda
asd
as
z
xczxcz2d
wzqwz2112d1f3zdf15z3adff5duke4mde4864de3x5
afsf5as56dsg2f22dfag1df2g5erfg48er74eaa132sda
dsfgj
ghrrrgangwrrgrgasaaa
a

sasdffqwer1234

Time: All
First serial console history
Last serial console history
Search Cancel

2. Use the drop-down menu **Time** to select one of the three options from All, Exclude, and Include. To search records for a particular time period, select either the **Include** or **Exclude** from the drop-down menu, and set the time parameters with the **First serial console history** and **Last serial console history** fields.

- ◆ Select **All** to search all the records that exists in the database.
- ◆ Select **Include** to search all the records that fall within the specified time range.
- ◆ Select **Exclude** to search all the records that fall outside of the specified time range.

3. When you have finished with this page, click **Search** at the bottom of the panel.

The search results are displayed in the Serial Console History table in reverse chronological order in the main panel.

Serial Console History
Options

A record of all user sessions that take place in serial console server will be displayed here.

| Name | Model | IP | MAC | Server | Description |
|--------------|----------|--------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| lq(SN0148CO_ | SN0148CO | 10.3.167.203 | 0010744800b2 | 3700T-15243 | 11 |

COM1
Export
Print

```

asdfghjkl
asfandsasdsd
dasde
q
we
sfsadf212fv4556dasdf46a45621a3ef12e56fueffasdf5g456sada
asd
as
z
xcvxcv2d2
v2eqw212131f2zdf153sdf56u4edw4864d4f3a5
af6af5a456g5g2f2dfag1df2g5er6g48er674eara13zsdga
d3f3
qwergrgsergrgrgasaaa
a
a
sasdfqwer1234

```

Export

To Export the Serial Console History, do the following:

1. Select a Model from the Serial Console History list.
2. Use the drop-down menu to select the device's USB port number.
3. Click **Export** to export your Serial Console History.

Print

To Print the Serial Console History, do the following:

1. Select a Model from the Serial Console History list.
2. Use the drop-down menu to select the device's USB port number.
3. Click **Print** to print.

Session history

```

asdfghjkl
asfandsasdsd
dasde
q
we
sfsadf212fv4556dasdf46a45621a3ef12e56fueffasdf5g456sada
asd
as
z
xcvxcv2d2
v2eqw212131f2zdf153sdf56u4edw4864d4f3a5
af6af5a456g5g2f2dfag1df2g5er6g48er674eara13zsdga
d3f3
qwergrgsergrgrgasaaa
a
a
sasdfqwer1234

```

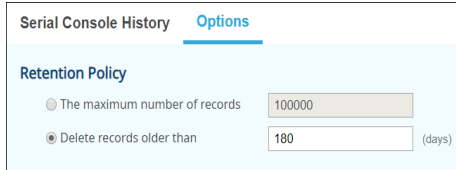
Operator: administrator

Print Date: Thu May 30 13:38:04 CST 2019

Print Close

Options

The Options page gives you control over serial console history's Retention Policy. When you select Options, a page similar to the one below appears:



The screenshot shows a web interface for 'Serial Console History' with a sub-tab 'Options'. Under the 'Retention Policy' heading, there are two radio button options. The first option, 'The maximum number of records', is unselected and has a text input field containing '100000'. The second option, 'Delete records older than', is selected and has a text input field containing '180' followed by '(days)'.

To control your serial console history's Retention Policy, do the following:

1. For the Retention Policy, click on the radio button to select between **The maximum number of records** and **Delete records older than** options.
 - ♦ Select **The maximum number of records** if you want to maintain the serial console history database on a records basis.
 - ♦ Select **Delete records older than** if you want to maintain the serial console history database on a days basis.

-
- Note:**
- ♦ When the number of days and records is reached, events are discarded on a “first in first out” basis.
 - ♦ The valid range for number of records is from 10000 - 1,000,000 serial console history records.
 - ♦ The valid range for number of days is from 30 - 1096 days.
-

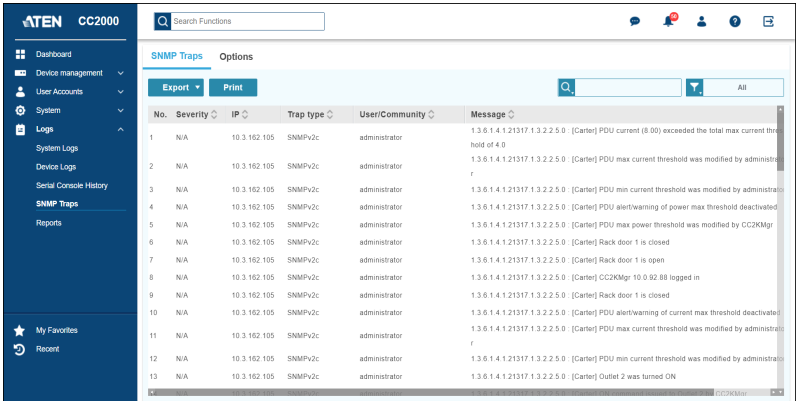
2. When you have finished with this page, click **Save** at the bottom-right of the page.

SNMP Traps

The SNMP Traps menu offers two tab menu choices, SNMP Traps, and Options. Which allows you to search for SNMP trap events and set further options for the search and display function.

SNMP Traps

The SNMP Traps is the default page, and it looks similar to the one below:



- ◆ The default layout shows all of the SNMP traps that have taken place on the entire CC2000 installation, displayed in reverse chronological order.
- ◆ The sort order of the list can be changed by clicking the column headings.
 - ◆ Clicking the Date column heading changes the sorting order between standard and reverse chronological order.
 - ◆ Clicking the Severity column heading changes the sorting order between standard and reverse alphabetical order.

Export

The Export tab offers two options, SNMP traps in current page, and All SNMP traps.

■ SNMP traps in current page

Select **SNMP traps in current page** to automatically download all the SNMP trap records of current SNMP Traps page.

Note: The amount of traps downloaded in current page is determined by Items per page drop-down menu.

■ All SNMP traps

Select **All SNMP traps** to automatically download all of the SNMP trap records from the SNMP Traps.

Print

To print out the SNMP Trap list, select **Print**.

Note: Only the list that is displayed (all, or a filtered choice) is printed.

SNMP Trap

| | | | | | | | Total: 14 |
|-----|---------------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|----------------|--|-----------|
| No. | Date | Severity | IP | Trap type | User Community | Message | |
| 1 | 2018-09-18 00:14:18 | Critical | 10.3.187.31 | SNMPv2c | administrator | 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0: 144 days, 13:49:56.021.3.6.1.4.3.1.14.10: 1.3.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.4.9.2.13.6.1.4.1.201713.2.3.4.7.8.2.0: (Pv2c) | |
| 2 | 2018-09-18 00:14:18 | Critical | 10.3.187.31 | SNMPv2c | administrator | 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0: 144 days, 13:49:55.391.3.6.1.4.3.1.14.10: 1.3.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.4.9.2.13.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.5.0: [0] PE7302: Andrew: [1] PDS: clear warning of value maximum threshold exceeded | |
| 3 | 2018-09-18 00:14:18 | Critical | 10.3.187.31 | SNMPv2c | administrator | 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0: 144 days, 13:49:55.311.3.6.1.4.3.1.14.10: 1.3.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.4.9.2.13.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.5.0: [0] PE7302: Andrew: [1] PDS: clear warning of power maximum threshold exceeded | |
| 4 | 2018-09-18 00:13:26 | Critical | 10.3.187.31 | SNMPv2c | administrator | 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0: 144 days, 13:48:16.021.3.6.1.4.3.1.14.10: 1.3.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.4.9.2.13.6.1.4.1.201713.2.3.4.7.8.2.0: (Pv2c) | |
| 5 | 2018-09-18 00:13:17 | Warning | 10.3.187.31 | SNMPv2c | administrator | 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0: 144 days, 13:48:00.491.3.6.1.4.3.1.14.10: 1.3.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.4.9.2.13.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.5.0: [0] PE7302: Andrew: [1] PDS: current [1] 200: (Present) maximum threshold warning between 10000 - 120 | |
| 6 | 2018-09-18 00:13:17 | Warning | 10.3.187.31 | SNMPv2c | administrator | 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0: 144 days, 13:48:00.451.3.6.1.4.3.1.14.10: 1.3.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.4.9.2.13.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.5.0: [0] PE7302: Andrew: [1] PDS: maximum current threshold was modified by SNMP | |
| 7 | 2018-09-18 00:13:17 | Warning | 10.3.187.31 | SNMPv2c | administrator | 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0: 144 days, 13:48:00.451.3.6.1.4.3.1.14.10: 1.3.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.4.9.2.13.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.5.0: [0] PE7302: Andrew: [1] PDS: maximum voltage threshold was modified by SNMP | |
| 8 | 2018-09-18 00:13:17 | Warning | 10.3.187.31 | SNMPv2c | administrator | 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0: 144 days, 13:48:00.451.3.6.1.4.3.1.14.10: 1.3.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.4.9.2.13.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.5.0: [0] PE7302: Andrew: [1] PDS: maximum power dissipation threshold was modified by SNMP | |
| 9 | 2018-09-18 00:13:16 | Information | 10.3.187.31 | SNMPv2c | administrator | 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0: 144 days, 13:48:00.371.3.6.1.4.3.1.14.10: 1.3.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.4.9.2.13.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.5.0: [0] PE7302: Andrew: [1] PDS: maximum power threshold was modified by SNMP | |
| 10 | 2018-09-18 00:13:16 | Information | 10.3.187.31 | SNMPv2c | administrator | 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0: 144 days, 13:48:00.391.3.6.1.4.3.1.14.10: 1.3.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.4.9.2.13.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.5.0: [0] PE7302: Andrew: [1] PDS: maximum voltage threshold was modified by SNMP | |
| 11 | 2018-09-18 00:13:16 | Information | 10.3.187.31 | SNMPv2c | administrator | 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0: 144 days, 13:48:00.391.3.6.1.4.3.1.14.10: 1.3.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.4.9.2.13.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.5.0: [0] PE7302: Andrew: [1] PDS: maximum power threshold was modified by SNMP | |
| 12 | 2018-09-18 00:13:16 | Information | 10.3.187.31 | SNMPv2c | administrator | 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0: 144 days, 13:48:00.391.3.6.1.4.3.1.14.10: 1.3.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.4.9.2.13.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.5.0: [0] PE7302: Andrew: [1] PDS: maximum current threshold was modified by SNMP | |
| 13 | 2018-09-18 00:06:29 | Information | 10.3.187.31 | SNMPv2c | administrator | 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0: 144 days, 13:04:21.391.3.6.1.4.3.1.14.10: 1.3.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.4.9.2.13.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.5.0: [0] PE7302: Andrew: [1] Disable Alarm Buzzer | |
| 14 | 2018-09-27 00:46:28 | Information | 10.3.187.31 | SNMPv1 | administrator | 1.3.6.1.4.1.201713.2.2.5.0: [0] PE7302: Andrew: [1] administrator 10.0.90.108 logged out | |

Operator: administrator

Print Date: Wed May 29 22:26:39 PDT 2019

Print Close

Options

The Options page gives you control over SNMP trap’s Retention Policy. When you select Options, a page similar to the one below appears:

SNMP Traps Options

Retention Policy

☒ The maximum number of SNMP traps

100000

☐ Delete SNMP traps older than

180

(days)

To control your SNMP trap’s Retention Policy, do the following:

1. For the Retention Policy, click on the radio button to select between **The maximum number of SNMP traps** and **Delete SNMP traps older than** options.

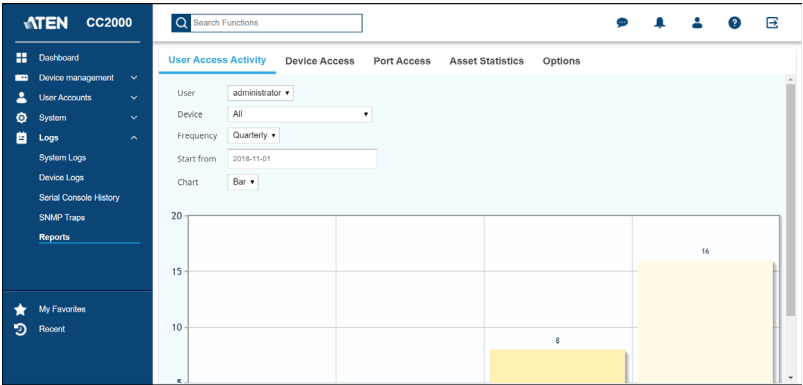
- ♦ Select **The maximum number of SNMP traps** if you want to maintain the SNMP trap database on a records basis.
- ♦ Select **Delete SNMP traps older than** if you want to maintain the SNMP trap database on a days basis.

-
- Note:**
- ♦ When the number of days and records is reached, events are discarded on a “first in first out” basis.
 - ♦ The valid range for number of records is from 10000 - 1,000,000 SNMP traps.
 - ♦ The valid range for number of days is from 30 - 1096 days.
-

2. When you have finished with this page, click **Save** at the bottom-right of the panel.

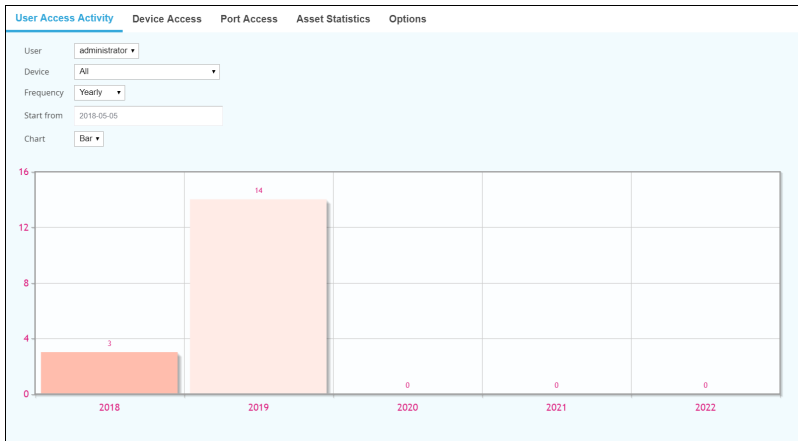
Reports

The Reports tab offers five tab menus: User Access Activity, Device Access, Port Access, Asset Statistics, and Options. You can view access statistics about users and devices on the CC2000 installation and set options for how the reports are displayed.



User Access Activity

This page provides Statistics for Device/Port Access Per User. The User Access Activity is the default page, and it looks similar to the one below:



Fill in the fields from the main panel to build and display either a pie or bar chart, or both according to the parameters you set.

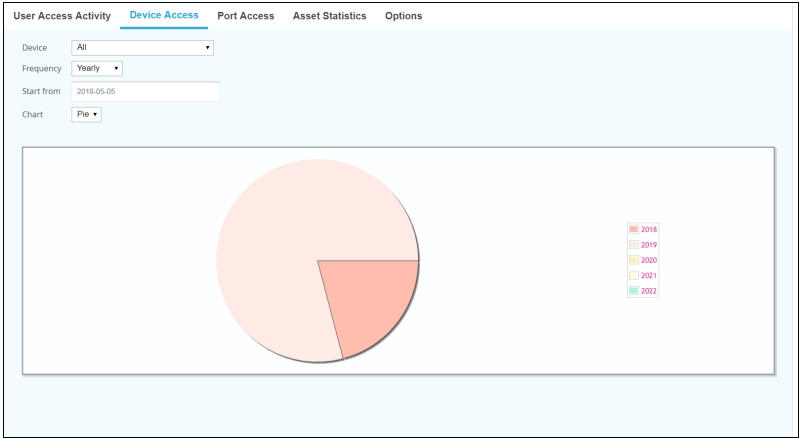
The meanings of each fields are described in the table below:

| Item | Description |
|------------|---|
| User | Use the drop-down menu User to browse a list of users to select from and to display their access statistics. |
| Device | <p>Select All or an individual port/device to display statics for. This will display a graph with the number of times a user has accessed the device(s), according to the Frequency you select.</p> <p>The numbers displayed within each chart color show the number of times the device was accessed (on that day/week/month/quarter/year) and it's percentage of the whole.</p> |
| Frequency | <p>Select the amount of time that the chart is divided into. The chart will display how many times the Device was accessed within a given time span, divided by the selected period:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Daily: Displays how many times the device was accessed each day, for a span of 7 days, beginning on the Start From date. ♦ Weekly: Displays how many times the device was accessed each week, for a span of 4 weeks, beginning on the Start From date. The format 2013-W42 represents week 42 of the year 2013. ♦ Monthly: Displays how many times the device was accessed each month, for a span of 12 months, beginning on the Start From date. ♦ Quarterly: Displays how many times the device was accessed each quarter, for 4 quarters of a year, beginning on the Start From date. ♦ Yearly: Displays how many times the device was accessed each year, for a span of 5 years, beginning on the Start From date. <p>Note: If the device was not accessed no data will be displayed.</p> |
| Start From | Click the calendar to select a start date for the span of time that will be represented in the chart. |
| Chart | <p>Select the type of chart you would like to use to display the information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Pie: Shows a round chart divided into the time period selected. ♦ Bar: Shows individual bar graphs divided into the time periods selected. ♦ All: Displays both a Pie and Bar chart. |

Device Access

The Device Access page provides Statistics for Device Access.

Fill in the fields from the main panel to build and display either a pie or bar chart, or both according to the parameters you set. When the **Pie** is selected for **Chart**, the Device Access page looks similar to the one below:



The meanings of each fields are described in the table below:

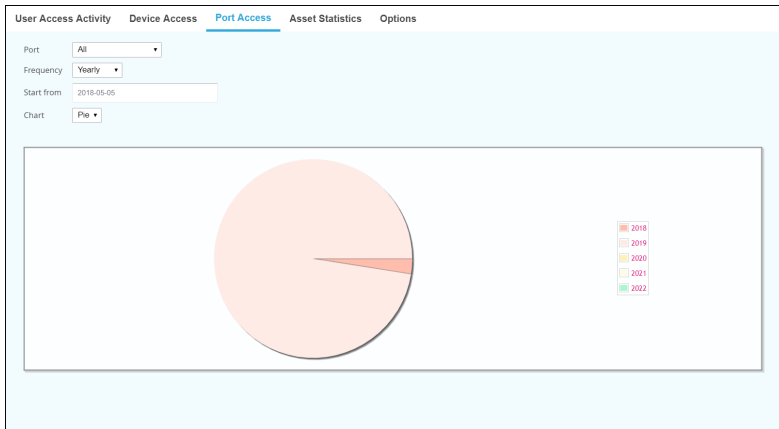
| Item | Description |
|------------|--|
| Device | <p>Select All, Top 10 port, or an individual device that you want to display statics for. This will display a graph with the number of times the device(s) has been accessed, according to the Frequency you select.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Top 10 port: Display the top 10 devices statics. <p>The numbers displayed with each chart color show the number of times the device was accessed (on that day/week/month/quarter/year) and it's percentage of the whole.</p> |
| Frequency | <p>Select the amount of time that the chart will be divided into. The chart will display how many times the Device was accessed within a given time span, divided by the selected period:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Daily: Displays how many times the device was accessed each day, for a span of 7 days, beginning on the Start From date.♦ Weekly: Displays how many times the device was accessed each week, for a span of 4 weeks, beginning on the Start From date. The format 2013-W42 represents week 42 of the year 2013.♦ Monthly: Displays how many times the device was accessed each month, for a span of 12 months, beginning on the Start From date.♦ Quarterly: Displays how many times the device was accessed each quarter, for 4 quarters of a year, beginning on the Start From date.♦ Yearly: Displays how many times the device was accessed each year, for a span of 5 years, beginning on the Start From date. <p>Note: If the device was not accessed no data will be displayed.</p> |
| Start From | <p>Click the calendar to select a start date for the span of time that will be represented in the chart.</p> |

| Item | Description |
|-------|--|
| Chart | <p>Select the type of chart you would like to use to display the information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Pie: Shows a round chart divided into the time period selected. ♦ Bar: Shows individual bar graphs divided into the time periods selected. ♦ All: Displays both a Pie and Bar chart. |

Port Access

The Port Access page provides Statistics for Port Access.

Fill in the fields from the main panel to build and display either a pie or bar chart, or both according to the parameters you set. The Port Access page looks similar to the one below:



The meanings of each fields are described in the table below:

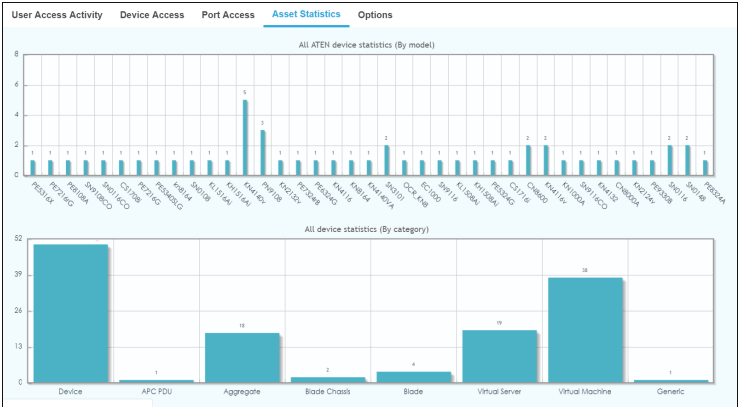
| Item | Description |
|------|--|
| Port | <p>Select All, Top 10 port, or an individual port that you want to display statics for. This will display a graph with the number of times the port(s) was accessed, according to the Frequency you select.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Top 10 port: Display the top 10 devices statics. <p>The numbers displayed with each chart color show the number of times the port was accessed (on that day/week/month/quarter/year) and it's percentage of the whole.</p> |

| Item | Description |
|------------|--|
| Frequency | <p>Select the amount of time that the chart will be divided into. The chart will display how many times the Port was accessed within a given time span, divided by the selected period:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">◆ Daily: Displays how many times the port was accessed each day, for a span of 7 days, beginning on the Start From date.◆ Weekly: Displays how many times the port was accessed each week, for a span of 4 weeks, beginning on the Start From date. The format 2013-W42 represents week 42 of the year 2013.◆ Monthly: Displays how many times the port was accessed each month, for a span of 12 months, beginning on the Start From date.◆ Quarterly: Displays how many times the port was accessed each quarter, for 4 quarters of a year, beginning on the Start From date.◆ Yearly: Displays how many times the port was accessed each year, for a span of 5 years, beginning on the Start From date. <p>Note: If the port was not accessed no data will be displayed.</p> |
| Start From | <p>Click the calendar to select a start date for the span of time that will be represented in the chart.</p> |
| Chart | <p>Select the type of chart you would like to use to display the information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">◆ Pie: Shows a round chart divided into the time period selected.◆ Bar: Shows individual bar graphs divided into the time periods selected.◆ All: Displays both a Pie and Bar chart. |

Asset Statistics

The Asset Statistics page displays all the assets that have been added to the CC2000 installation, shown in two charts: **All ATEN device statistics (By model)**, and **All device statistics (By category)**.

The Port Access page looks similar to the one below:



- ♦ **All ATEN device statistics (By model)** shows the number of ATEN devices by model, that are currently associated with the CC2000 installation.
- ♦ **All device statistics (By category)** shows all devices associated with the CC2000 installation by category: Devices (ATEN devices), APC PDU, Aggregate, Blade Chassis, Blade, Virtual Server, Virtual Machine, and Generic.

Options

The Options page provides options for customizing the report colors and for saving report records, and it looks similar to the one below:

To customize the report, do the following:

1. Fill in the **Keep report records for months** field under **Maintenance**.
2. Adjust the color fields under **Chart Color Customization**.
3. When you have finished with this page, click **Save** at the bottom-right of the panel.

The meanings of each fields are described in the table below:

| Item | Description |
|-------------|--|
| Maintenance | Enter the number of months you would like the system to keep report records for before deleting. |

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| Chart Color Customization | <ul style="list-style-type: none">◆ Text color: Click the box to bring up a small window and choose the color you would like to use for text displayed within the reports.◆ Color 1~12: Click the boxes to bring up a small window to choose the color you would like to use for each key in the charts. <p>After selecting a color the test chart to the right will change accordingly so you can see how your graph will look.</p> |

- ◆ Default Color tab: Click to return all colors back to the default settings.

Appendix A

Technical Information

License Agreement

End User Software License Agreement For CC2000 Series

This END USER SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT is entered into as of the date of installment of the Licensed Software by you (“Effective Date”), by and between ATEN International Co. Ltd., having its principal place of business at 3F, No. 125, Sec. 2, Da-Tung Rd., Si-Jhih, Taipei, Taiwan 221, R.O.C. (“ATEN”) and YOU.

This Agreement is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or a single entity) and ATEN. PLEASE READ THIS AGREEMENT CAREFULLY. BY INSTALLING OR USING THE SOFTWARE THAT ACCOMPANIES THIS AGREEMENT (“Software”), YOU AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE, DO NOT USE THE SOFTWARE. YOU have the rights below:

1. DEFINITIONS:

1.1

“Licensed Software” shall be defined as the object code version of software programs or files in machine readable format provided to YOU by ATEN.

1.2

“Documentation” means all manuals, user documentation, and other related materials pertaining to the Licensed Software that ATEN provides to YOU.

2. GRANT OF RIGHTS:

2.1

ATEN hereby grants to YOU, and YOU hereby accept, subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement, a non-exclusive, non-transferable, non-sublicense, non-assignable, non-irrecoverable, limited license to install the Licensed Software to the hardware with ONE COPY ONLY, and to use the hardware, incorporated Licensed Software and the related Documentation.

2.2

Aforesaid grants are restricted as follows: (a) The Licensed Software hereunder is licensed, not sold, to you by ATEN. YOU acknowledge that all copyrights and intellectual property rights in the Licensed Software in any form provided by ATEN to YOU are the sole property of ATEN and its licensor. YOU shall not have any right, title or interest in or to any of the copyrights and intellectual property rights in the Licensed Software. ATEN reserves all rights not expressly granted. (b) YOU may make a single archival copy of the Licensed Software only, but may not copy, modify, distribute, or resell the Licensed Software. (c) You may not rent, lease, lend or encumber the Licensed Software. (d) You may not decompile, or reverse engineer the Licensed Software. (e) The terms and conditions of this Agreement will apply to any Licensed Software updates, provided to you at ATEN's discretion. (f) the Licensed Software is not designed, licensed or intended for use in the design, construction, operation or maintenance of any nuclear facility. ATEN and its licensors disclaim any express or implied warranty of fitness for such use. (g) No right, title or interest in or to any trademark, service mark, logo or trade name of ATEN or its licensors is granted under this Agreement.

3. LIMITED WARRANTY.

3.1

WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, ATEN solely warrants that the Licensed Software will meet the functions provided by ATEN for a period of thirty (30) days from the date of receipt. If an implied warranty or condition is created by your state/jurisdiction and federal or state/provincial law prohibits disclaimer of it, YOU also have an implied warranty or condition, BUT ONLY AS TO DEFECTS DISCOVERED DURING THE PERIOD OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY. Otherwise, the Licensed Software is licensed "As-Is". You bear the risk of using it except otherwise expressed above. ATEN gives no express warranties, guarantees or conditions. You may have additional consumer rights under your local laws which this agreement cannot change. To the extent permitted under your local laws, ATEN excludes the implied warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose and non-infringement.

3.2

ATEN hereby declares that (a) this Licensed Software may contain Java technology. You shall make a separate agreement for modifications to or use of the Java technology under compatibility requirements available at www.java.net, and (b) this Licensed Software also may contain open source code from the global community of open source developers. With respect to

Licensed Software, Documentation and any Updates and modifications thereof that is embodied in the Java Compatibility (includes, but not limited to JavaMail API, JavaBeans Activation Framework (JAF), AXL-RADIUS, AXL-TACACS, JavaServiceWrapper (3.2.3)) and open source, (includes, but not limited to J2SE JRE, Apache Tomcat, Apache Derby database, Apache Struts framework, JSR 80) or other technologies belonging to third parties, patent holders of such technology may contact YOU and request the payment of royalties. YOU ACKNOWLEDGE THAT ATEN IS NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR THE PAYMENT OF SUCH ROYALTIES AND THAT YOU WILL NEGOTIATE IN GOOD FAITH WITH THE RESPECTIVE PATENT HOLDERS TO ADDRESS THEIR CLAIMS AND OBTAIN NECESSARY LICENSES AS REQUIRED. IN NO EVENT SHALL ATEN BE RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY LOSS AND COST AGAINST AFORESAID INFRINGEMENT OR ROYALTY CLAIMS. ATEN FURTHER DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AGAINST INFRINGEMENT, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO OPEN SOURCE OR JAVA TECHNOLOGY THAT IS EMBODIED IN THIS LICENSED SOFTWARE.

4. Limitation of Liability.

IN NO EVENT SHALL ATEN BE LIABLE TO YOU OR ANY END-USERS, FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, PUNITIVE, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THE LICENSING OR USE OF THE SOFTWARE, DOCUMENTATION FOR ANY ERROR OR DEFECT. IF, AT ANY TIME, ATEN SHALL HAVE ANY LIABILITY ARISING FROM OR BY VIRTUE OF THIS AGREEMENT, AND WHETHER SUCH LIABILITY IS DUE TO ATEN'S OR ITS AFFILIATE'S NEGLIGENCE, BREACH OF ITS OBLIGATIONS HEREUNDER, OR OTHERWISE, IN NO EVENT WILL THE TOTAL AGGREGATE LIABILITY OF ATEN AND ITS AFFILIATES FOR ANY CLAIMS, LOSSES, OR DAMAGES INCURRED BY YOU EXCEED THE LICENSE FEE HEREUNDER. THIS LIMITATION OF LIABILITY IS COMPLETE AND EXCLUSIVE, SHALL APPLY EVEN IF AMD OR ITS AFFILIATES HAS BEEN ADVISED.

5. Export Regulations.

All Software, documents and any other materials delivered hereunder are subject to the applicable export control laws and may be subject to export or import regulations in other countries. You agree to comply strictly with these laws and regulations and acknowledge that you have the responsibility to obtain any licenses to export, re-export, or import as may be required after delivery to you.

6. TERMINATION:

This Agreement shall be effective on the Effective Date and shall continue in effect until terminated by ATEN without any cause upon prior thirty days' written notice to YOU, or upon the prior thirty days' announcement on the ATEN website.

7. MISCELLANEOUS:

7.1

The following provisions of this Agreement shall survive its termination or expiration: Sections 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

7.2

The rights and obligations of each party to this Agreement shall not be governed by the provisions of the United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, but instead this Agreement will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the Republic of China.

7.3

If any provision of this Agreement shall be held by a court of competent jurisdiction to be illegal, invalid or unenforceable, the remaining provisions shall remain in full force and effect.

7.4

This Agreement may be supplemented, modified, amended, released or discharged by a notice of ATEN in writing, or prior thirty days' announcement on the ATEN website.

7.5

If any action at law or in equity, including an action for declaratory relief or injunctive relief, is brought to enforce or interpret the provisions of this Agreement, the prevailing party shall be entitled to reasonable attorneys' fees in addition to any other relief to which the party may be entitled.

7.6

Any waiver by either party of any default or breach hereunder shall not constitute a waiver of any provision of this Agreement or of any subsequent default or breach of the same or a different kind.

Technical Support

International

- ♦ For online technical support – including troubleshooting, documentation, and software updates: <http://eservice.aten.com>
- ♦ For telephone support, see *Telephone Support*, page ii.

North America

| | | |
|--------------------------|--|---|
| Email Support | | support@aten-usa.com |
| Online Technical Support | Troubleshooting Documentation Software Updates | http://www.aten-usa.com/support |
| Telephone Support | | 1-888-999-ATEN ext 4988 1-949-428-1111 |

When you contact us, please have the following information ready beforehand:

- ♦ Product model number, serial number, and date of purchase.
- ♦ Your computer configuration, including operating system, revision level, expansion cards, and software.
- ♦ Any error messages displayed at the time the error occurred.
- ♦ The sequence of operations that led up to the error.
- ♦ Any other information you feel may be of help.

USB Authentication Key Specifications

| Function | | Key |
|---------------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| Environment | Operating Temp. | 0–40° C |
| | Storage Temp. | -20–60° C |
| | Humidity | 0–80% RH |
| Physical Properties | Composition | Metal and Plastic |
| | Weight | 14 g |
| | Dimensions | 8.36 x 2.77 x 1.37cm |

Supported Aten/Altusen Products

Refer to the CC2000 webpage for a list of supported products.

Device ANMS Settings

To enable CC Management of a device from the device's ANMS settings page, do the following:

1. Log into the device.
2. Refer to the device's User Manual to locate its ANMS settings page.
3. In the ANMS page, click the checkbox to *enable* CC Management, then key in the IP address and device port number (see *Device port*, page 15), of the CC2000 server that will manage the device.

VPNs

Basically, a VPN (virtual private network) is a private network that uses a public network (usually the Internet) to connect several sites together. It typically includes several WANs. Many companies create their own VPN to provide a secure network connection between two sites. One drawback to VPNs, however, is that while the network is secure, throughput can be slow.

If a VPN is used to connect several sites in a CC2000 management system, the only CC2000 server that is absolutely necessary to manage that system is a single Primary server – rather than the network of Primary and Secondary CC2000 servers necessary with the standard Internet deployment. We recommend that at least one CC2000 Secondary server is deployed, however, in order to provide redundant services to the connected devices.

Another advantage of deploying additional CC2000 Secondaries is that they can provide more efficient operation and management by speeding up network traffic.

Firewalls

When several CC2000 servers are located behind separate firewalls, the following service ports must be specified on the servers, and the corresponding ports must be opened on the firewall.

1. CC Port

Note: Each CC2000 server can have a different setting (8001 on Server 1; 8005 on Server 2, for example). But the port opened on the firewall must correspond to the CC Port setting (8001 on Server 1's firewall; 8005 on Server 2's firewall).

2. The CC2000 Primary server's HTTPS port
3. The CC2000 Proxy port (see *CC2000 Proxy Function* in the next section).
4. The CC2000 Secondary server's HTTPS port (Optional)

Note: 1. CC2000 Client Workstations can open web browser sessions to CC2000 Secondary servers inside the same firewall. Communication and access with the other CC2000 servers on the installation (outside of the firewall) takes place through the CC Port and Proxy port – therefore the HTTPS port isn't necessary. There is a drawback to doing this, however, in that you won't be able to perform device configuration on the devices outside the firewall.

2. You can open this port if you would like CC2000 Client Workstations outside the firewall to be able to directly open a web browser session to the Secondary server inside the firewall.

CC2000 Proxy Function

Activating CC2000 proxy function (proxy server) allows data transmission via a CC2000 server when client PCs are unable to directly communicate with KVM (managed by the CC2000 server) using the viewers.

If “Always use proxy” is checked, data is always transmitted via the CC2000 server.

As data is transmitted via the CC2000 server, its bandwidth may vary depending on the number of active viewer – KVM sessions.

For CC2000 Client Workstations (client PC) that are *outside* a firewall to access KVM and Serial devices managed by a CC2000 server *inside* the firewall, the CC2000 Proxy function must be enabled on the CC2000 server and two specific ports must be configured (opened) on the firewall:

- ♦ TCP Port (default 443) for safe Internet connection (https://) between the CC2000 and the client PC.
- ♦ TCP Port (default 8002) for image and Telnet data transmission of viewers.

Note: If you do not wish to use the Proxy function, you must open all the service ports (HTTPS, Program, Virtual Media, Telnet, SSH, etc.) on the firewall required by the devices.

Name, Description and Range Parameters

The following table lists the parameters and defaults for names, descriptions and ranges found in the CC2000 management system:

Note: Unless otherwise specified, field entries can be input in any supported language.

| Category | | Length / Range | Default |
|------------|----------------------------------|--|---------|
| Users | Login name | Up to the equivalent of 32 English alphanumeric characters. The minimum number is based on the account policy settings (see <i>CC2000 Authentication</i> , page 154). The following characters may not be used: / \ [] : ; = , + * ? < > @ " ' " | |
| | Password | The equivalent of 0–16 English alphanumeric characters. The minimum number is based on the account policy settings (see <i>CC2000 Authentication</i> , page 154). 0 means no password authentication. | |
| | Description | Up to 256 Bytes. | |
| | Session Timeout | 1–99 min. | 3 min |
| | Unexpected disconnection timeout | 2–10 min. | 2 min. |
| | Email | Up to 256 Bytes. From: 0–64 To: 0–128 Subject: 1–128 | |
| Groups | Name | 2–32 Bytes. The following characters may not be used: " ' " | |
| | Description | Up to 256 Bytes. | |
| User Types | Name | 2–32 Bytes. The following characters may not be used: " ' " | |
| | Description | Up to 256 Bytes. | |

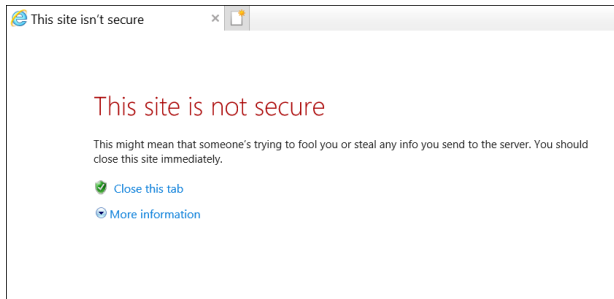
| Category | | Length / Range | Default |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|--|---------|
| Authentication Server | Server name | 2–32 Bytes. The following characters may not be used: " ' " | |
| | Description | Up to 256 Bytes. | |
| | Browser Method | Unlimited for Username and Password. Note: CC2000 performance is adversely affected if there are too many characters. | |
| CC2000 Authentication | Username Minimum | Up to the equivalent of 32 English alphanumeric characters. The minimum number is based on the account policy settings (see <i>CC2000 Authentication</i> , page 154). The following characters may not be used: / \ [] : ; = , + * ? < > @ " ' " | 6 |
| | Password Minimum | The equivalent of 0–32 English alphanumeric characters. The minimum number is based on the account policy settings (see <i>CC2000 Authentication</i> , page 154). 0 means no password authentication. | 6 |
| | Password Expires | No limit on the number of days. | |
| Devices | Name | 0–32 Bytes. | |
| | Description | Up to 256 Bytes. | |
| | Contact name | No limit on the number of Bytes. | |
| | Telephone | No limit on the number of Bytes. | |
| | Email notification | No limit on the number of Bytes. | |
| Aggregate Devices | Name | 1–32 Bytes. | |
| | Description | Up to 256 Bytes. | |
| Departments / Locations | Name | 1–32 Bytes. | |
| | Description | Up to 256 Bytes. | |
| Tasks | All Tasknames | No limit on the number of Bytes. | |
| | Primary Database Backup Password | 0–32 Bytes. 0 means no password authentication. | |
| | Export Device Log Pattern | No limit on the number of Bytes. | |
| System Log Options | By Period | 30-1096 days | |
| | By Record | 10,000–1,000,000 | |
| | Records per page | 100, 300, 500 | |

| Category | | Length / Range | Default |
|---------------------------------|-----------|------------------|---------|
| Log Notification Settings | Subject | 1–128 Bytes. | |
| | Mail from | Up to 64 Bytes. | |
| | Send to | Up to 128 Bytes. | |

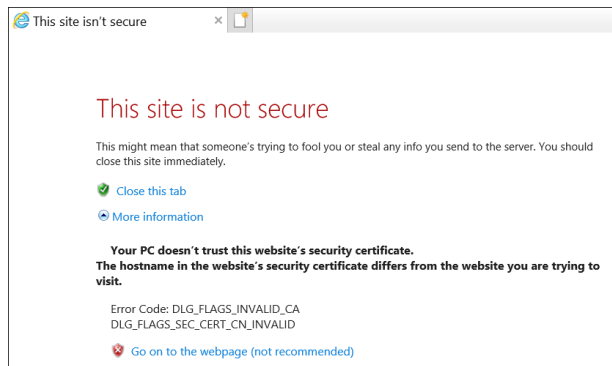
Trusted Certificates

Overview

When you try to log in to the device from your browser, a Security Alert message appears to inform you that the device's certificate is not trusted, and asks if you want to proceed.



The certificate can be trusted, but the alert is triggered because the certificate's name is not found on the Microsoft list of Trusted Authorities.



You can ignore the warning, click **More information** and click **Yes** to go on.

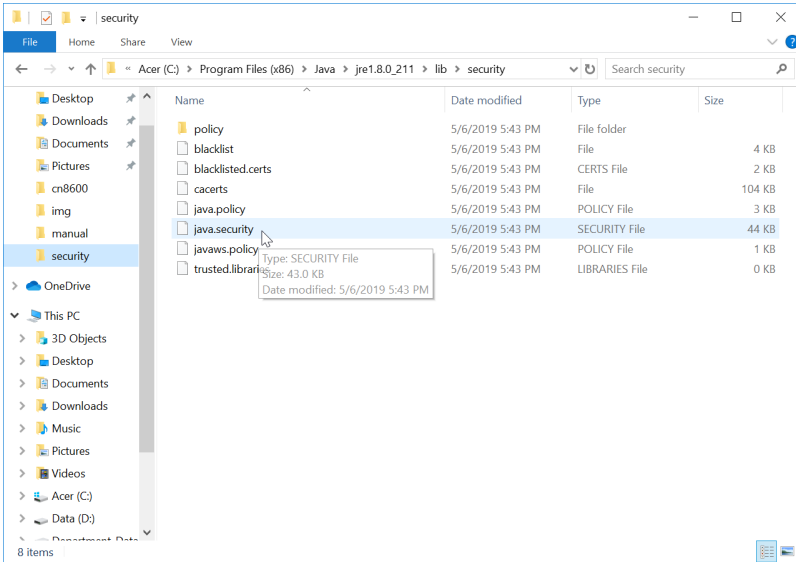
Note: To avoid users having to go through the certificate acceptance prompt each time they log in, you can use a third party certificate authority (CA) to obtain a signed certificate. See *Importing a Signed SSL Server Certificate*, page 179, for details.

Adding ARM-based PE series PDU

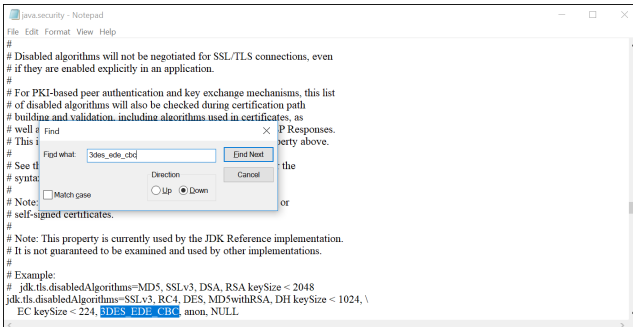
Compatibility settings of Java may prevent you from adding ARM-based PE series PDU.

Follow the steps below to modify the compatibility:

1. Go to your Java folder.
e.g. C:\Program Files (x86)\Java\jre1.8.0_211\lib\security
2. Locate the file “java.security”.



3. Open it with a text editor (e.g. notepad) and use the **Find** function.
4. In the **Find** window, enter “3DES_EDE_CBC”. An example is shown:



5. Delete the “3DES_EDE_CBC” part and save the file.

Note: We suggest keeping this whole line of text in a separate text file should you wish to add this back later on.

6. Restart your computer and add your ARM-based PE series PDU as demonstrated in *Adding ATEN KVM* on page 58.

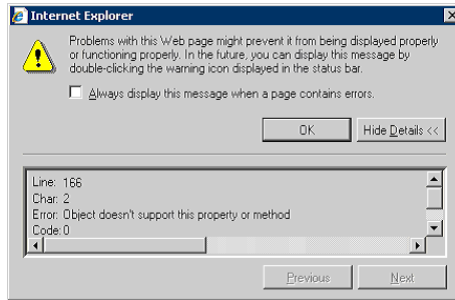
Troubleshooting

| Problem | Resolution |
|---|--|
| After installing the CC2000, a few minutes later the following error message appears: <i>Error 1067</i> | <p>The error message is generated by the Operating System, it indicates that the CC2000 service is unable to run. To resolve the problem try the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Reboot the computer.2. See if your computer meets the minimum requirements to run the CC2000 (see <i>Server Requirements</i>, page 5).3. If there was a previous version of the CC2000, and you are installing this version as a new installation rather than as an upgrade, this may indicate that you did not remove all files from the older version (see <i>Uninstalling the CC2000</i>, page 22). Uninstall the CC2000 following the procedures mentioned, and reinstall. |
| I key in the IP address for the CC2000 Website, but I can't bring up the CC2000 login page. | <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. The CC2000 only allows HTTPS requests. HTTP requests from a browser are automatically redirect to HTTPS requests. The default port for HTTP is 80; the default port for HTTPS is 443. If either of these ports has been set to something else by the administrator, the port number must be entered as part of the URL string. For example, if the CC2000's IP address is 10.10.10.10, and the SSL port has been set to 8443, then the URL string that you enter in the browser should be: <code>https://10.10.10.10:8443</code>2. Other services running on the CC2000 server are using the default ports. Use the CC2000 Utility (see page 257) to change the port settings.3. Make sure that the CC2000 service is running. If you are running Windows, see <i>Post-installation Check</i>, page 18; if you are running Linux, see <i>Post-installation Check</i>, page 21. |
| The language of the login dialog box wording is not the language I have set in my CC2000 Preferences. | The language precedence of the login page is to first look at the language that your browser is set for, and next to look at what your OS language is. After you have logged in, the CC2000 will display in the language you have set it for in Preferences. |
| I cannot log in to the CC2000. | Make sure your Username and Password are correct. |

| Problem | Resolution |
|---|--|
| When I try to log in, I get the following message: "Login failed. You are attempting to log in from a computer that already has a browser session open." | Certain browsers (e.g. Mozilla-based browsers) share the same session ID for multiple connections to the same server. The CC2000 will deny a login request once there already is a session open with the same session ID. Either: 1) end the currently open session and log in again; 2) log in from a different computer; or 3) log in with a non-Mozilla based browser. |
| When I log in, the browser generates a <i>CA Root certificate is not trusted</i> , or a <i>Certificate Error</i> response. | The certificate's name is not found on Microsoft's list of Trusted Authorities. The certificate can be trusted, however. See <i>Trusted Certificates</i> , page 247, for details. |
| After I log in to the CC2000, There is device management page. | You have not been authorized to access any ports. Check with your CC2000 administrator to get authorization to access the ports you are responsible for. |
| After I log in to the CC2000, I cannot bring up the page for the device I want to access. | Check with your CC2000 administrator to find out whether you are authorized to access that device. |
| When I log in to the CC2000, the only page that comes up is the System Management tab with only two menu entries: <i>This Server</i> and <i>License</i> . | A license conflict has occurred. See <i>License Conflict</i> , page 184, for details on resolving the problem. |
| I am not receiving email notifications of event trap situations | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check that the email server settings have been specified correctly in the CC2000 Manager. 2. Check that the email address specified in the related device's settings has been set correctly. 3. Check that the event trap settings for the related device has been specified correctly. |
| When I try to access my Generic device from the device management page, nothing happens. | Generic devices are accessed directly via the device's IP address. If the IP address has changed (because of a DHCP change, for example), then clicking the old IP address will not connect to the device at the new address. Ascertain the device's new IP address and change its settings accordingly. |
| The device I want to add cannot be found. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make sure the CC2000 Manager is running and all services have started successfully. 2. Make sure that CC Management has been enabled and specified correctly in the device's ANMS settings. |
| When adding a Cat5e KVM switch, can I add all the ports at the same time? | Yes – provided all the ports have KVM Adapters attached and their devices are on line. See the note on page 61, for details. |

| Problem | Resolution |
|---|--|
| The icon for my port indicates the port is online, but the icon for the device it belongs to indicates it is offline. I am unable to access the device or port. | This indicates that the device's firmware does not support this version of the CC2000. Update the device's firmware to the latest version. |
| Devices connected to my CC2000 Secondary servers do not show up in the Primary server's Available Devices list. | <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Check to see if the device has already been added. If it has, it will not show up in the list.2. Click the Auto Discovery button on each of the Secondaries.3. After trying #2, if the devices don't show up, check the device's ANMS settings to be sure that CC Management has been enabled and that the IP and port address of the CC2000 you want the device to be recognized by has been correctly specified.4. After trying #2, if the devices do show up, there was probably a network problem. Perform the Replicate Database to the Primary function. See <i>Replicate Database</i>, page 201, for details. |
| My ATEN/Altusen device isn't being recognized by the CC2000. | <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. The device in question may not be supported by the CC2000 management system. See <i>Supported Aten/Altusen Products</i>, page 240, for a list of supported devices.2. The device's firmware must be upgraded to the latest version in order to be capable of CC2000 management. |
| After making a setting change and clicking Save, a HTTP Status 500 - error page comes up. | You made a mistake when you entered the setting. This is an Apache Tomcat error message that appears whenever it receives a setting that makes no sense to it. To recover, select any other tab and then come back to make your change – be sure to enter a valid setting. |
| I set the CC2000 for "No timeout" operation, but it timed out anyway. | The change doesn't take effect until the next time you log in. |

Q1: When I open a viewer, the web page does not display or work correctly, and I receive an error message that is similar one of the following:



1. Reset the Internet Explorer security settings to enable Active Scripting, ActiveX controls, and Java Web Start.

By default, Internet Explorer 6 and some versions of Internet Explorer 5.x use the High security level for the Restricted sites zone and Microsoft Windows Server 2003 uses the High security level for both the Restricted sites zone and the Internet zone. You may want to enable Active Scripting, ActiveX controls, and Java Web Start. To enable Active Scripting, ActiveX controls, and Java Web Start, follow these steps:

- a) Start Internet Explorer.
 - b) On the Tools menu, click Internet Options.
 - c) In the Internet Options dialog box, click Security.
 - d) Click Default Level.
 - e) Click OK.
2. Verify that Active Scripting, ActiveX, and Java are not blocked
If some computers work but other, verify that Internet Explorer or another program on your computer such as an anti-virus program or a firewall are not configured to block scripts, ActiveX controls, or Java Web Start.
 3. Verify that your anti-virus program is not set to scan the Temporary Internet Files or Downloaded Program Files folders

4. Delete all the temporary Internet-related files

To remove all the temporary Internet-related files from your computer, follow these steps:

- a) Start Internet Explorer.
- b) On the Tools menu, click Internet Options.
- c) Click the General tab.
- d) Under Temporary Internet files, click Settings.
- e) Click Delete Files.
- f) Click OK.
- g) Click Delete Cookies.
- h) Click OK.
- i) Under History, click Clear History, and then click Yes.
- j) Click OK.

5. Make sure that you have the latest version of Microsoft DirectX installed

For information about how to install the latest version of Microsoft DirectX, visit the following Microsoft Web site:

<http://www.microsoft.com/windows/directx/default.aspx?url=/windows/directx/downloads/default.htm>

6. Make sure that you have the latest version of the Java JRE installed.

For information about how to install the latest version of the JRE visit the Java Web site: www.java.com

Self-Signed Private Certificates

If you wish to create your own self-signed encryption key and certificate, a free utility – openssl.exe – is available for download over the web at www.openssl.org. To create your private key and certificate do the following:

1. Go to the directory where you downloaded and extracted openssl.exe to.
2. Run openssl.exe with the following parameters:
`openssl req -new -newkey rsa:1024 -days 3653 -nodes -x509 -keyout CA.key -out CA.cer -config openssl.cnf`

Note: 1. The command should be entered all on one line (i.e., do not press [Enter] until all the parameters have been keyed in).

2. If there are spaces in the input, surround the entry in quotes (e.g., "ATEN International").

To avoid having to input information during key generation the following additional parameters can be used: `/C /ST /L /O /OU /CN /emailAddress`.

Examples

```
openssl req -new -newkey rsa:1024 -days 3653 -nodes -x509 -
keyout CA.key -out CA.cer -config openssl.cnf -subj /
C=yourcountry/ST=yourstateorprovince/L=yourlocationorcity/
O=yourorganization/OU=yourorganizationalunit/
CN=yourcommonname/emailAddress=name@yourcompany.com

openssl req -new -newkey rsa:1024 -days 3653 -nodes -x509 -
keyout CA.key -out CA.cer -config openssl.cnf -subj /C=CA/ST=BC/
L=Richmond/O="ATEN International"/OU=ATEN /CN=ATEN/
emailAddress=eservice@aten.com.tw
```

Importing the Files

After the openssl.exe program completes, two files – CA.key (the private key) and CA.cer (the self-signed SSL certificate) – are created in the directory that you ran the program from. These are the files that you upload in the *Update CC2000 Server Certificate* panel (see *Import Private Key and Certificate*, page 180).

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

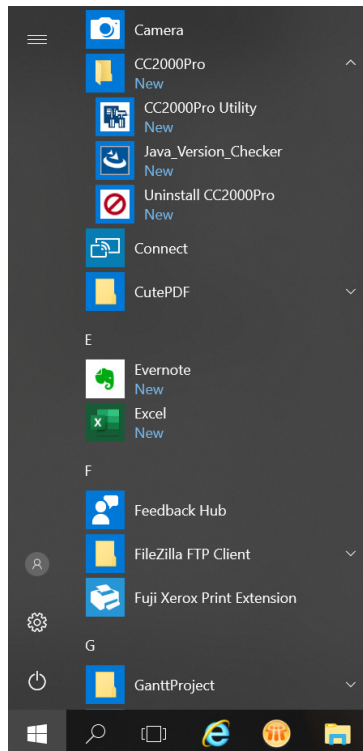
Appendix B

The CC2000 Utility

Overview

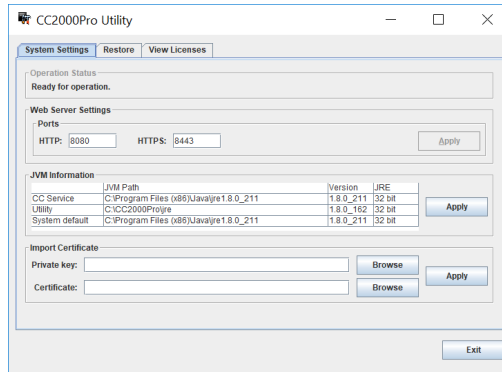
The CC2000Pro Utility gets installed as part of the CC2000 installation procedure. It allows you to configure a number of the CC2000's parameters from the desktop of the computer that the CC2000 runs on, without having to invoke the browser GUI.

In Windows, to run the program, open the *Start* menu; navigate to the CC2000 entry (Programs → CC2000Pro), and select CC2000Pro Utility:



In Linux, as root, go to the **/opt/CC2000Pro/Runnable** directory, and run the CC2000Pro_Utility file.

When you run the program, a screen, similar to the one below, appears:



The Utility offers three tabs: *System Settings*, *Restore* and *View Licenses*. Each of the tabs is described in the sections that follow.

System Settings

Apache Tomcat is the program that serves the CC2000's web pages. The CC2000's installation programs asks you to specify the ports that Apache Tomcat listens on for web requests.

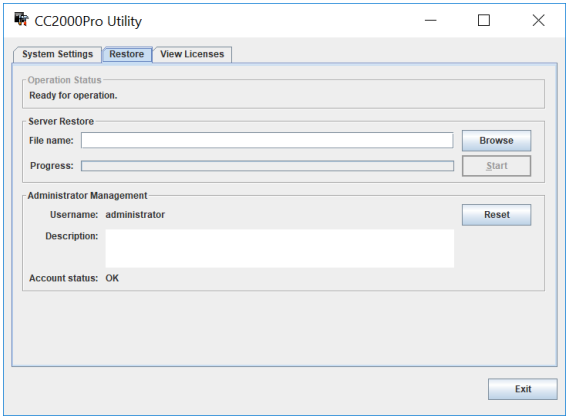
- ♦ The *HTTP* port is the regular port that Apache Tomcat listens on. The default is 80. If you use a different port, users must specify the port number in the URL of their browsers.
- ♦ The *HTTPS* port is the secure port that Apache Tomcat listens on. The default is 443. If you use a different port, users must specify the port number in the URL of their browsers.

If a port conflict occurs with the ports that you have set and prevents the web page from opening, you can use this utility to change the port settings.

After making your settings, click **Apply** to save the changes.

Restore

Clicking the Restore tab brings up a dialog box that looks similar to the one below:

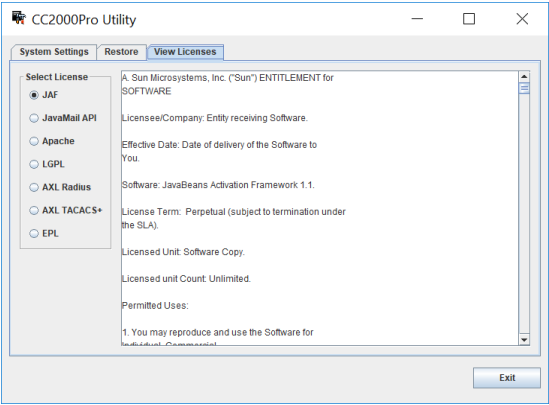


The dialog box is divided into three panels, as described in the table below:

| Panel | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| Operation Status | You can use this to check that the CC2000 service is up and running normally. |
| CC2000 Restore | Used to restore the CC2000's Primary server database to a previously saved version (see <i>Backup Primary Server Database</i> , page 187). Click Browse to navigate to the location of the file. After you select the file and return to the dialog box, click Start to begin the operation. The progress of the operation is indicated in the <i>Progress</i> field. |
| Administrator Management | Clicking Reset returns the default System Administrator's account to the default (administrator / password). If this account has been Locked (see <i>Lockout Policy</i> , page 208) it is automatically Unlocked. |

View License

The View Licenses tab lets you view the licenses that are related to the CC2000 package. To view a license, click its radio button.



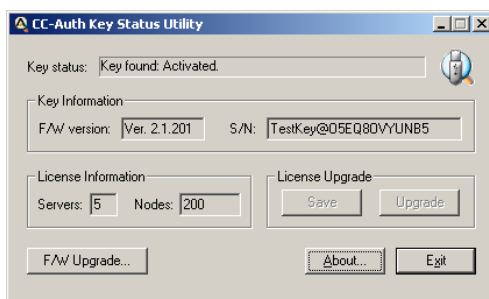
Appendix C

Authentication Key Utility

Overview

The Authentication Key Utility (*CCAuthKeyStatus.exe*), is a Windows-based utility for accessing and updating the information and data contained in the CC2000 Authentication Key. *CCAuthKeyStatus.exe*, can be found on the CD that comes with the CC2000 package.

When you run the program, a screen, similar to the one below, appears:



Key Status Information

The layout of the dialog box is described in the table, below:

| Section | Purpose |
|---------------------|--|
| Key Status | Indicates whether the key has been recognized and accepted as valid or not. |
| Key Information | Displays the key's current firmware version and serial number. |
| License Information | Displays the number of servers (Primary and Secondaries), and the number of nodes the key is licensed for. |
| License Upgrade | These buttons are used when performing an Offline license upgrade. |
| F/W Upgrade | This button is used to upgrade the authentication key's firmware. |

Key Utilities

The License Upgrade and F/W Upgrade sections offer utilities that allow you to upgrade the key's firmware (F/W Upgrade), and to upgrade the number of servers and nodes authorized by the license (License Upgrade).

Key Firmware Upgrade

The CC2000 Authentication Key's firmware is upgradable. As new revisions of the firmware become released, upgrade file are posted on our web site. Check the web site regularly to find the latest files and information relating to them.

Starting the Upgrade

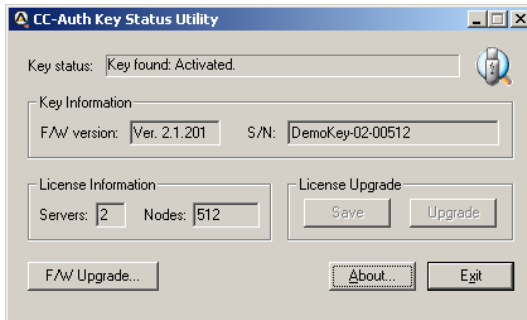
To upgrade your firmware do the following:

1. Go to our website and download the new firmware file to a convenient location on your computer.
2. With the authentication key plugged in, run the *Key Status Utility* (CCAuthKeyStatus.exe).

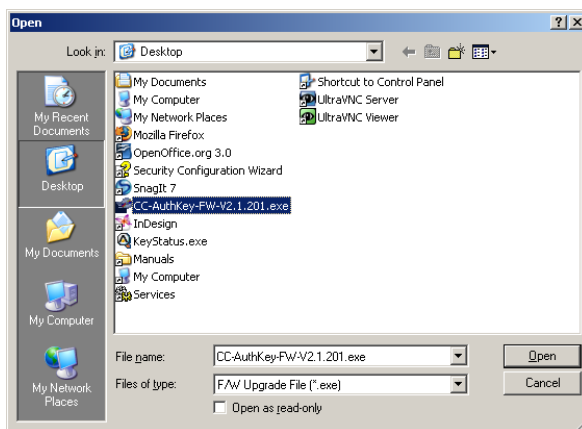
Note: 1. *CCAuthKeyStatus.exe* only runs under Windows.

2. Firmware version 2.1.204 or higher is required for CC2000 authentication keys to support the license upgrade function.
 3. *KeyStatus.exe*, can be found on the CD that comes with the CC2000 package. This file should be copied to a convenient location on your computer.
-

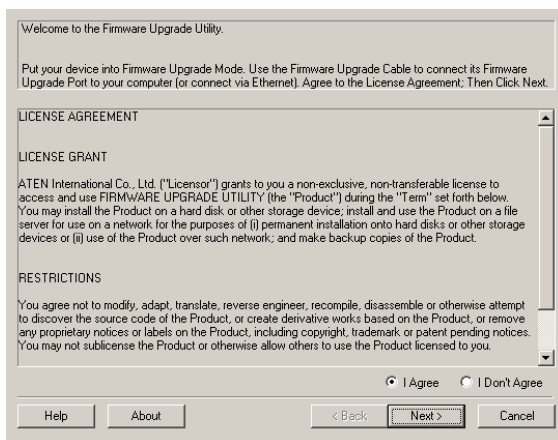
4. In the screen that appears, click **F/W Upgrade...**



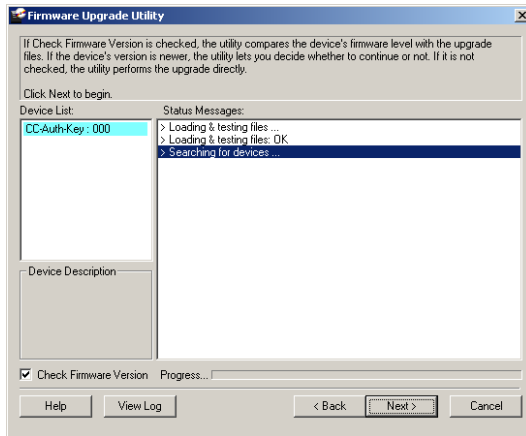
5. In the *File Open* dialog box that appears, select the firmware upgrade file, then click **Open**.



6. Read and *Agree* to the License Agreement (enable the *I Agree* radio button).



7. The utility searches your installation. When it finds your device, it lists it in the *Device List* panel.



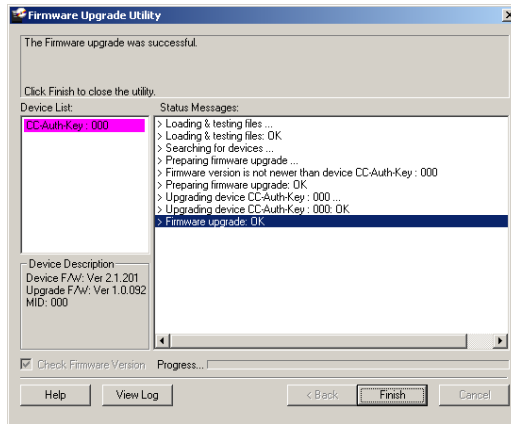
Note: If you enable *Check Firmware Version*, the Utility compares the device's firmware level with that of the upgrade files. If it finds that the device's version is higher than the upgrade version, it brings up a dialog box informing you of the situation and gives you the option to Continue or Cancel.

If you don't enable *Check Firmware Version*, the Utility installs the upgrade files without checking if they are a higher level.

Click **Next** to continue.

Upgrade Succeeded

After the upgrade has completed, a screen appears to inform you that the procedure was successful:



Click **Finish** to close the Firmware Upgrade Utility.

Key License Upgrade

Overview

The CC series has a feature that allows end users (clients) to update their authentication keys to reflect an increase to their number of licenses. The key license upgrade can be performed either by the clients or by the dealers/distributors, and can take place either in a browser session over the Internet (an Online upgrade), or via a stand-alone utility program (an Offline upgrade).

Clients first inform their dealers/distributors of the number of licenses to be upgraded. The dealers/distributors then place an order with an Altusen sales representative, specifying the number of licenses to be added. After processing the order, Altusen then sends a confirmation and authorization email to the dealer/distributor with the necessary details for performing the upgrade.

Note: A separate order must be processed for each key.

There are two ways to upgrade the key:

- ♦ **On Line:** To perform the upgrade the key is inserted in the computer's USB port and a browser session is opened to directly upgrade the key. If the client performs the upgrade, the dealer/distributor provides him with the email authorization details; if the dealer/distributor performs the upgrade, the client provides him with the Authentication Key.
- ♦ **Off Line:** A Windows-based *Key Status Utility* is used to extract the key's information and write it to a Key Information Data File. The key information data file is then used in a browser session to generate a license upgrade file. After the license upgrade file has been generated, the Key Status Utility is used again to write the upgrade file's information to the license key.
 - ♦ If the client is the one who updates the CC license database, the dealer/distributor provides him with the email authorization details – allowing the client to generate his key license upgrade file. The client then uses the Key Status Utility and the key license upgrade file to upgrade the Authentication Key's license information.
 - ♦ If the dealer/distributor is the one who updates the CC license database, the client provides him with the key information data file (extracted with the Key Status Utility) which the dealer/distributor uses to generate the client's key license upgrade file. The dealer/distributor then returns the key license upgrade file to the client which the client uses with the Key Status Utility to upgrade the Authentication Key's license information.

Online Upgrade

Clients contact their dealers/distributors to place their upgrade order(s). A separate order must be processed for each key. After the dealers/distributors place the upgrade orders with an Altusen sales representative, they receive a confirmation and authorization email, similar to the example below:

Your order is ready to be processed. Please go to <http://xxx.xxx.x.xxx> to upgrade your key's license.

Login Information:

- ◆ Username: myname2
- ◆ Password: mypassword5678

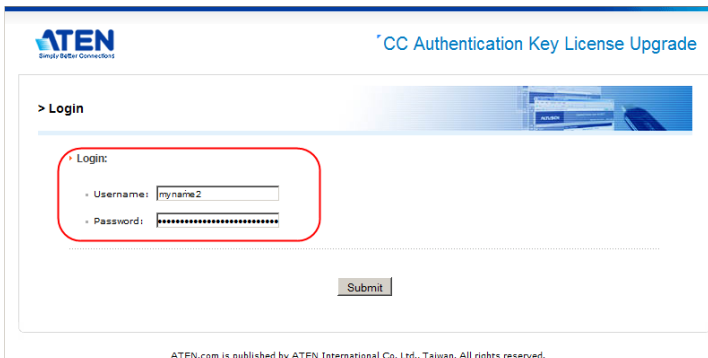
Order Information:

- ◆ Order ID: 1017000700 (authorized number: 2068919892). This order requests 7 more server(s) and 20500 more node(s)
-

Either the client or the dealers/distributors can perform the upgrade. If the dealer does it, the client provides the dealer with his license key; if the client does it, the dealer forwards the confirmation email to him.

Follow the steps below to perform online upgrade.

1. Plug the authentication key into a USB port on your computer.
2. Open a browser, go to the website CC Authentication Key License Upgrade page:
<https://cc.aten.com.tw/>
3. When the upgrade Login screen comes up, log in with the Username and Password provided in the authorization email.



ATEN
Simply Better Connections

CC Authentication Key License Upgrade

> Login

• Login:

• Username:

• Password:

ATEN.com is published by ATEN International Co. Ltd., Taiwan. All rights reserved.

4. In the screen that comes up, key in the Order ID number and Order Authorization number that applies to the upgrade, then click **Continue**.

The screenshot shows the 'CC Authentication Key License Upgrade' interface. Under the 'User Information' section, the following details are listed: Login Name: myname2, Phone: 111-5678-1234, FAX: 111-5678-1235, and E-mail: myname2@mycompany2.com. The 'Order Information' section, highlighted with a red box, contains two input fields: 'Order ID' with the value 1017000700 and 'Order Authorized Number' with the value 2068919892. A 'Continue...' button is located below these fields. At the bottom, a small text line reads: 'ATEN.com is published by ATEN International Co. Ltd., Taiwan. All rights reserved.'

5. In the License Upgrade Order Information screen, key in the current number of licenses in the From fields (the To fields are automatically filled in), and select **Online upgrade**.

The screenshot displays the 'License Upgrade Order Information for CC2000' screen. The 'Order Information' section shows 'Order ID: 1017000700' and a message: 'This order asks for 7 more server(s), and 20590 more node(s)'. Below this, two rows of input fields are shown, both highlighted with a red box: 'Upgrade number of servers: From 1 To 8' and 'Upgrade number of nodes: From 64 To 20564'. The 'Upgrade Options' section at the bottom features two radio buttons: 'Online upgrade' (which is selected and circled in red) and 'Offline upgrade'. A 'Continue...' button is positioned at the bottom center. The footer text states: 'ATEN.com is published by ATEN International Co. Ltd., Taiwan. All rights reserved.'

Note: You can use the Key status utility (CCAAuthKeyStatus.exe) to see the current number of licenses.

If only server licenses are being upgraded, the Upgrade Order Information Screen looks like the one below. If the node licenses are already set to be *unlimited*, put a check in the checkbox; otherwise fill in the appropriate node numbers in the From field:

CC Authentication Key License Upgrade

> License Upgrade Order Information for CC2000

Order Information:

- Order ID: 1017000758
- This order asks for 31 more server(s).
- * Upgrade number of servers: From To
- * Upgrade number of nodes: From Unlimited or To

Upgrade Options:

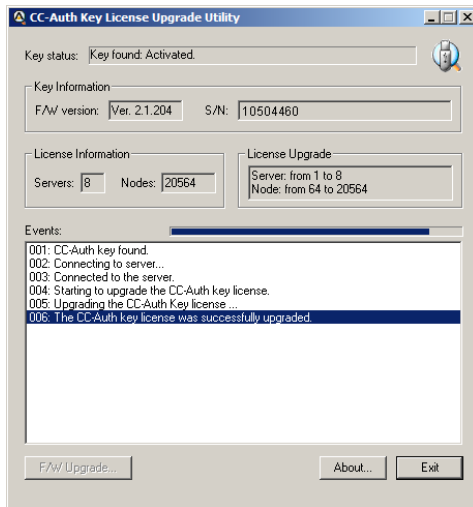
- ☒ Online upgrade
- ☐ Offline upgrade

[Continue...](#)

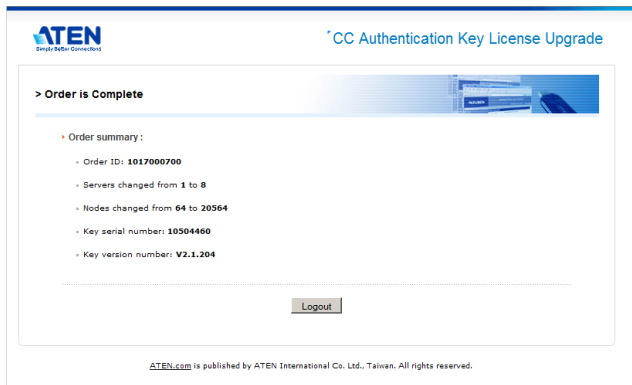
6. Click **Continue**.
7. When the CC Authentication Key License Upgrade by Distributor screen comes up, click **Download**.
8. When the browser asks what to do with the file (KeyUpgrade.exe), select *Save to disk*.
9. Leave the browser open, exactly as it is; go to where you downloaded the file and execute it.

Note: This step must be done in the same web session that you downloaded the KeyUpgrade.exe file in. Otherwise the upgrade will not succeed.

The upgrade utility comes up and starts the upgrade. The actions it performs are reported in the main panel:

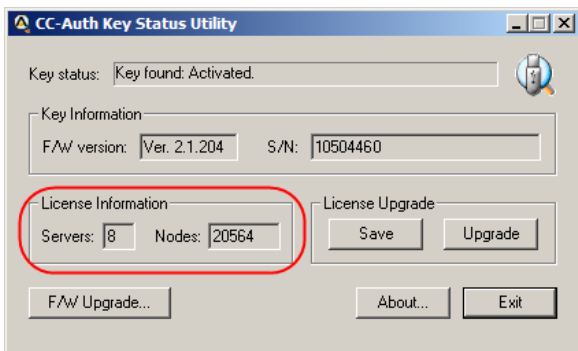


10. When the upgrade is finished, a window pops up to inform you that the upgrade was successful. Click **OK** to close the popup. The browser screen provides a summary of the upgrade:



11. Click **Logout** to exit.

You can use the Key status utility (CCAuthKeyStatus.exe) to confirm that the number of licenses on the key has been changed to reflect the successful upgrade:



Upgrade Succeeded

After the upgrade has succeeded, the dealer/distributor receives an email from Altusen informing him that the upgrade has been completed online. For example:

Your order (Order ID: 1017000700) has been completed successfully by the online utility.

The key (PSN: 10504460) server number has been upgraded from 1 to 8, and node number from 64 to 20564.

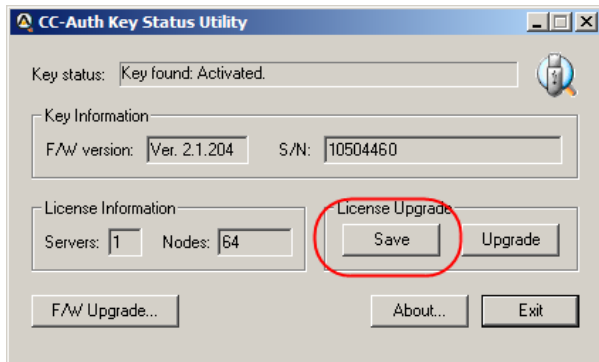
Offline Upgrade

An Offline upgrade can be performed either by the dealer/distributor, or the end user client. The advantage of this type of upgrade is that the client doesn't give up the use of his key. All he needs to do is email a key information data file to the dealer/distributor and receive a key upgrade file in return.

Preliminary Steps

To perform the upgrade, the first step that the client must perform is to create a *Key Information Data File*, as follows:

1. With the authentication key plugged in, run the *Key Status Utility* (CCAuthKeyStatus.exe).
2. In the *License Upgrade* panel of the dialog box that comes up, click **Save** to create a *Key Information Data File* (KeyUpload.dat).



Note: The Key Information Data File is created in the same directory that the Key Status Utility resides in.

After the Key Information Data File is created, the client sends it to the dealer/distributor.

Performing the Upgrade

After the dealers/distributors place the upgrade orders with an Altusen sales representative, they receive a confirmation and authorization email from ALTUSEN, for example:

Your order is ready to be processed. Please go to <http://xxx.xxx.x.xxx> to upgrade your key's license.

Login Information:

- ◆ Username: myname3
- ◆ Password: mypassword3

Order Information:

- ◆ Order ID: 1017000750 (authorized number: 1605991978). This order requests 1 more server(s) and 448 more node(s)

To perform the upgrade, do the following:

1. Follow steps 1 – 3 given for the Online Upgrade (see page 267).
2. When the upgrade Login screen comes up, log in with the Username and Password provided in the authorization email.

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the ATEN logo (Smart Better Connected) in the top left and the title "CC Authentication Key License Upgrade" in the top right. Below the title is a "Login" section. A red rectangle highlights the login fields: "Username: myname3" and "Password: [masked]". A "Submit" button is located below the password field. At the bottom of the page, a small line of text reads: "ATEN.com is published by ATEN International Co. Ltd., Taiwan. All rights reserved."

3. In the screen that comes up, key in the Order ID number and Order Authorization number that applies to the upgrade, then click **Continue**.

The screenshot shows the 'CC Authentication Key License Upgrade' window. It has a header with the ATEN logo and the title. Below the header, there are two sections: 'User Information' and 'Order Information'. The 'User Information' section contains fields for Login Name, Phone, FAX, and E-mail. The 'Order Information' section contains fields for Order ID and Order Authorized Number. A red box highlights the 'Order Information' section. At the bottom of the 'Order Information' section is a 'Continue...' button. Below the main form area, there is a small line of text: 'ATEN.com is published by ATEN International Co. Ltd., Taiwan. All rights reserved.'

ATEN
Smarter. Better. Connected.

CC Authentication Key License Upgrade

> User Information

• User Information

- Login Name: myname3
- Phone: 111-123-456788
- FAX: 111-123-456789
- E-mail: myname3@mycompany3.com

• Order Information

- Order ID: 1017000750
- Order Authorized Number: 1605991978

Continue...

ATEN.com is published by ATEN International Co. Ltd., Taiwan. All rights reserved.

4. When the License Upgrade Order Information screen comes up, key in the number of current licenses in the *From* fields. The *To* fields are automatically filled in.

Note: If necessary, you can use the Key Status Utility (CCAuthKeyStatus.exe) to see the number of current licenses.

5. Select that this is to be an Offline upgrade, then click **Continue**.

The screenshot shows the 'License Upgrade Order Information for CC2000' window. It has a header with the ATEN logo and the title. Below the header, there are two sections: 'Order Information' and 'Upgrade Options'. The 'Order Information' section contains fields for Order ID, a description of the order, and fields for the number of servers and nodes. The 'Upgrade Options' section contains radio buttons for 'Online upgrade' and 'Offline upgrade'. A red box highlights the 'Offline upgrade' option. At the bottom of the 'Upgrade Options' section is a 'Continue...' button. Below the main form area, there is a small line of text: 'ATEN.com is published by ATEN International Co. Ltd., Taiwan. All rights reserved.'

ATEN
Smarter. Better. Connected.

CC Authentication Key License Upgrade

> License Upgrade Order Information for CC2000

• Order Information:

- Order ID: 1017000750
- This order asks for 1 more server(s), and 448 nodes.
- Upgrade number of servers: From 1 To 1
- Upgrade number of nodes: From 64 To 512

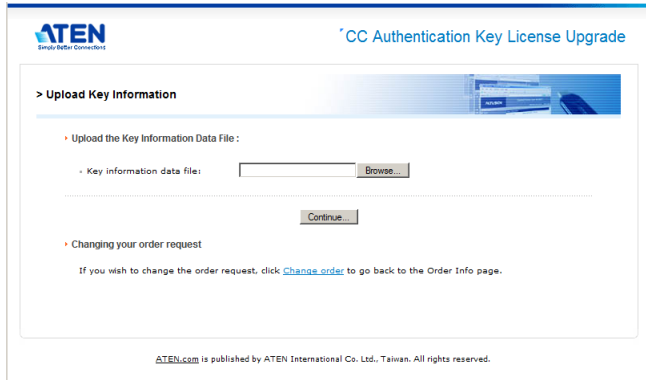
• Upgrade Options:

- ☐ Online upgrade
- ☒ Offline upgrade

Continue...

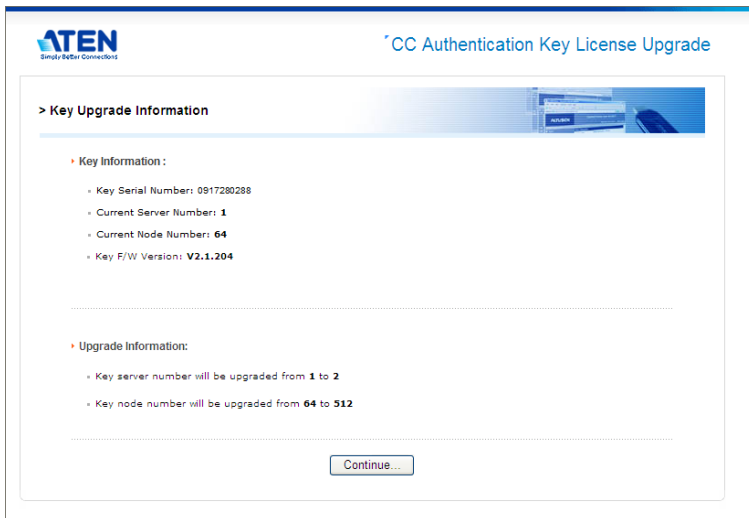
ATEN.com is published by ATEN International Co. Ltd., Taiwan. All rights reserved.

- When the Upload Key Information screen comes up, click **Browse**; load the **KeyUpload.dat** file that was generated in the *Preliminary Steps* section; then click **Continue**.



The screenshot shows the 'Upload Key Information' screen within the ATEN software. The ATEN logo is in the top left, and the title 'CC Authentication Key License Upgrade' is in the top right. The main heading is '> Upload Key Information'. Below it, there is a section 'Upload the Key Information Data File:' with a sub-item 'Key information data file:' followed by a text input field and a 'Browse...' button. A 'Continue...' button is centered below this section. Further down, there is a section 'Changing your order request' with a link 'Change order' and a note: 'If you wish to change the order request, click [Change order](#) to go back to the Order Info page.' At the bottom, a small footer states: 'ATEN.com is published by ATEN International Co. Ltd., Taiwan. All rights reserved.'

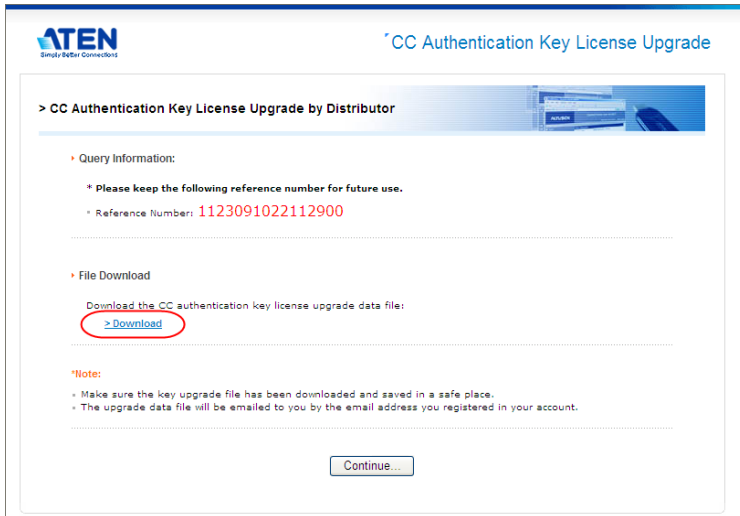
- The next screen that comes up summarizes the transaction up to this point.



The screenshot shows the 'Key Upgrade Information' screen within the ATEN software. The ATEN logo is in the top left, and the title 'CC Authentication Key License Upgrade' is in the top right. The main heading is '> Key Upgrade Information'. Below it, there is a section 'Key Information:' with the following details: 'Key Serial Number: 0917280288', 'Current Server Number: 1', 'Current Node Number: 64', and 'Key F/W Version: V2.1.204'. Below this is a section 'Upgrade Information:' with the following details: 'Key server number will be upgraded from 1 to 2' and 'Key node number will be upgraded from 64 to 512'. A 'Continue...' button is centered at the bottom of the screen.

Click **Continue** to move on.

8. In the screen that appears next, click **Download** to download the key license upgrade data file (KeyUpgrade.dat).



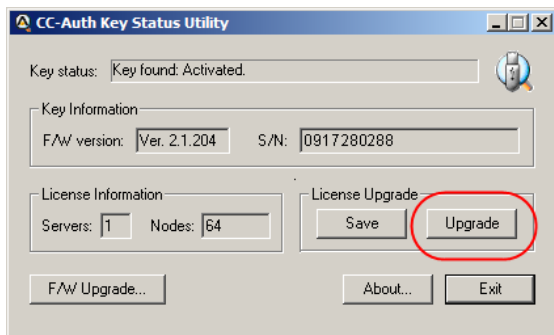
9. When the browser asks what to do with the key upgrade file, select *Save to disk*. After the file is saved to disk, click **Continue** to go on.
10. In the confirmation popup that appears click **Yes**. A summary page confirming the order appears.
11. Click **Logout** to exit.

Note: 1. If you are upgrading more than one key, you can rename the KeyUpgrade.dat files to separately recognizable names (keeping the *dat* extension).

2. If the client is performing the upgrade, the dealer/distributor provides the KeyUpgrade.dat file to the client.

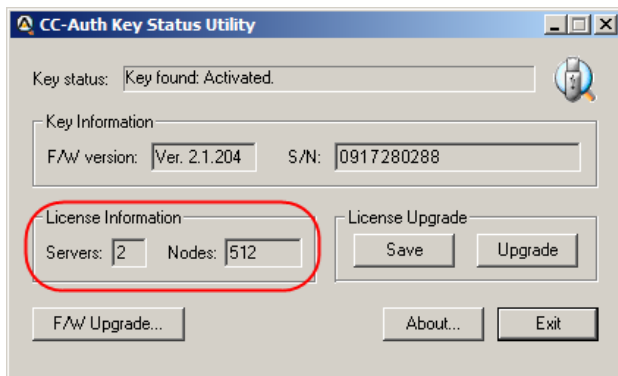
12. Run the *Key Status Utility* again.

13. In the License Upgrade panel, click **Upgrade**.



14. In the dialog box that comes up, navigate to the upgrade file (KeyUpgrade.dat) and select it.

- ◆ Once you click **Open**, a window pops up stating that the upgrade was successful.
- ◆ The figure for the number of licenses in the License Information panel changes to reflect the upgrade.



Offline Upgrade Failure

If the offline upgrade fails, it may be due to the key upgrade file (KeyUpgrade.dat), having become corrupted during the file transfer process. There are two ways to proceed:

- ♦ When the key upgrade file is downloaded, an email is sent to the dealer/distributor containing the particulars, along with a copy of the upgrade file in case there was a problem with the original file transfer – as shown in the example, below:

Offline upgrade email response:

Your CC-Authentication key's upgrade data file is attached. Please upgrade your CC-Auth key with the attached file.

Key Info:

* F/W Version: 2.1.204

* Serial number: 0917280288

License Upgrade Info:

* From 1 to 2 concurrent servers

* From 64 to 512 concurrent nodes

Confirmation Info:

* Username: newname

* Password: 1123091022112900

If you have any problem with upgrading your CC-Authentication key's license, please confirm it online at <http://xxx.xxx.x.xxx> using the username and password above.

You can repeat steps 11 (Run the Key Status Utility) and 12 (Click Upgrade) – this time using the copy of the key upgrade file (KeyUpgrade.dat) that was attached in the dealer/distributor email.

- ♦ If the above fails to resolve the problem, information contained in the *Offline email upgrade response* can be used to try an online upgrade. Either the dealer/distributor can provide the end user with the authorization details, or the end user can give his key to the dealer/distributor.

Order Expiration

Once Altusen sends the dealer/distributor the confirmation/authorization email informing him that the order is ready to be processed, he has a total of two weeks to process the order. If during that time the order is not processed, two more emails reminding him that order has not been processed are sent:

1. Your order will expire in one week...
2. Your order will expire in one day...

If, the order still has not been processed by the end of the deadline, a final email is sent, informing the dealer/distributor that the order has expired, as follows:

Your order has expired and has been cancelled...

If you still wish to add licenses, you must place a new order.

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

Appendix D

External Authentication Services

Overview

In addition to its own internal *Username / Password* authentication procedure, the CC2000 supports authentication from external, third party authentication services. If a third party service has been specified for a user, the CC2000 transfers the login information to the appropriate service for authentication using an encrypted HTTPS (SSL) connection. The CC2000 supports the following third party external authentication servers: LDAP, LDAPS, Active Directory, RADIUS, TACACS+, and Windows NT Domain.

Approved Services

The following services have been tested and approved for use with the CC2000:

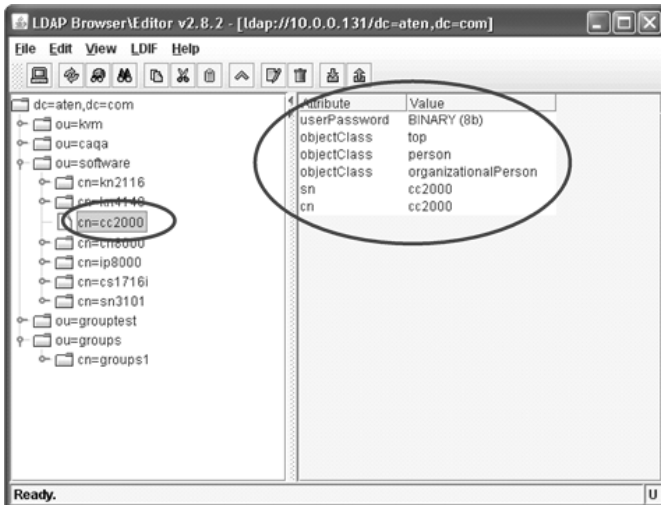
- ♦ AD Server: Microsoft Windows Server 2003
- ♦ LDAP: Microsoft Windows Server 2003; OpenLDAP
- ♦ RADIUS: Microsoft IAS for Windows Server 2003; FreeRADIUS
- ♦ TACACS+: Microsoft Windows Server 2003 (ClearBox)
- ♦ Microsoft Windows NT Domain

LDAP/LDAPS – OpenLDAP Setting Example

In this example, the external server uses OpenLDAP; its IP address is 192.168.10.100; its service port is 389, and the server administrator has created a file named: *cc2000ldap.ldif* in the OpenLDAP directory, that contains the following:

```
dn: cn=cc2000,ou=software,dc=aten,dc=com
objectclass: top
objectclass: person
objectclass: organizationalPerson
cn: cc2000
sn: cc2000
userPassword: password
```

The LDAP administrator can check the LDAP definition with LDAP Browser. He should see a screen that looks like the one below:



The CC2000 Administrator gets this information to use in the *Adding an External Authentication Server* procedure (see *LDAP*, page 151). In this example, the fields would be filled in as follows:

IP: 192.168.10.100

Port: 389

BaseDN: dc=aten,dc=com

UserRDN: ou=software

Key attribute: cn

Object class: person

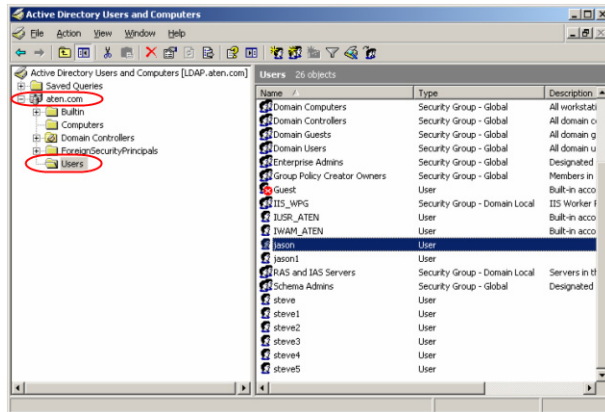
Full name attribute: sn

After the LDAP/LDAPS Authentication server has been added, the CC2000 Administrator can use the Browse button to browse all the user names in the *software* directory.

Active Directory Settings Example

In this example the external server is Active Directory on Windows Server 2003 system; its IP address is 192.168.10.100. Configure Active Directory in Windows Server 2003 as follows:

1. Open Start → Control Panel → Administrative Tools → Active Directory Users and Computers → Domain (aten.com in our example) → Users. A window, similar to the one below, appears:



The CC2000 Administrator gets this information to use in the *Adding an External Authentication Server* procedure (see *Active Directory*, page 150). In this example, the fields would be filled in as follows:

IP: 192.168.10.100

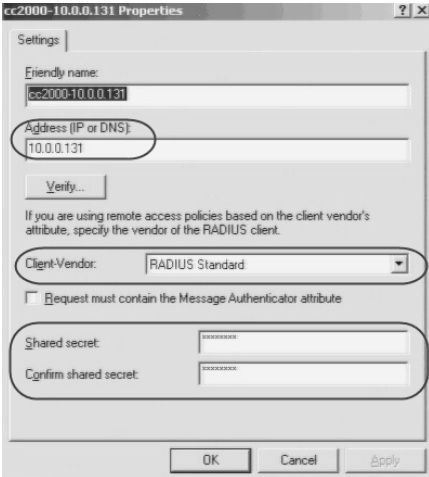
UserRDN: cn=users

After the Active Directory Authentication server has been added, the CC2000 Administrator can use the Browse button to browse all the user names in the *Users* directory.

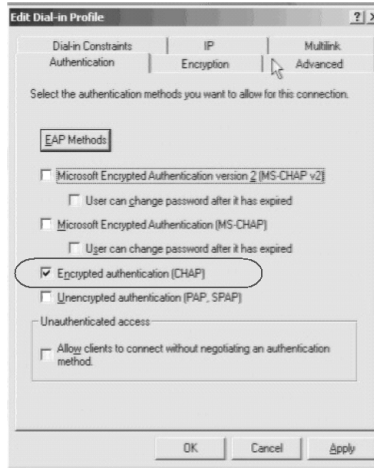
RADIUS Settings Example

In this example the external server is RADIUS: Microsoft IAS for Windows Server 2003; its IP address is 10.0.0.100. Configure RADIUS as follows:

1. Open Start → Control Panel → Administrative Tools → Internet Authentication Services.
2. In the screen that comes up, right click on **RADIUS Client**.
3. Select **New RADIUS Client**.
4. In the screen that comes up key in the *Friendly name*. For example: cc2000-10.0.0.131, then click **Next**. A screen, similar to the one below, appears:



5. In this example, the CC2000's IP is *10.0.0.131*; the Client-Vendor is *RADIUS Standard*. For the *Shared secret*, use **password**.
6. After clicking OK, you return to the Internet Authentication Services screen. In the left panel, click **Remote Access Policies**; in the main panel right click **Use Windows authentication for all users**; select *Properties*.
7. In the screen that comes up, click the **Edit Profile** button, then select the **Authorization** tab. A screen similar to the one below appears:



8. In this example we use CHAP for encrypted authorization

The CC2000 Administrator gets this information to use in the *Adding an External Authentication Server* procedure (see *RADIUS and TACACS+*, page 152). In this example, the fields would be filled in as follows:

IP: 10.0.0.100

Authentication type: CHAP

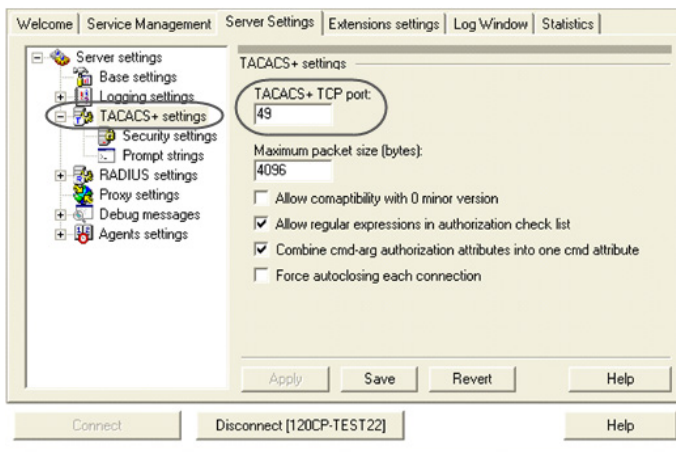
Shared secret: password

After the RADIUS Authentication server has been added, when the CC2000 Administrator adds user accounts, he must use the names that were configured on the RADIUS server under Open Start → Control Panel → Administrative Tools → Computer Management → Local Users and Groups → Users for the Login names.

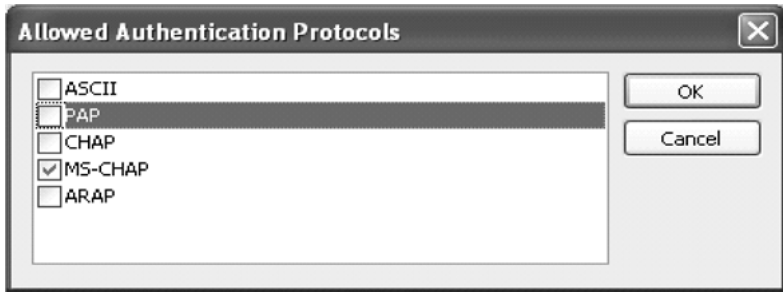
TACACS+ Settings Example

In this example the external server is TCACS+: Microsoft IAS for Windows Server 2003 (ClearBox); its IP address is 10.0.0.100. Configure TCACS+ as follows:

1. Open Start → All Programs → ClearBox RADIUS TACACS+ Server → Server Manager.
2. In the screen that comes up, click **Connect**.
3. Key in the password that you set when you installed the ClearBox RADIUS TACACS+ Server.
4. In the *ClearBox Server Configurator* screen that comes up, select the **Server Settings** tab. A screen, similar to the one below, appears:



5. In this example, the TACACS+ service port is 49.
6. Open Start → All Programs → ClearBox RADIUS TACACS+ Server → Configurator.
7. In the screen that comes up in the left panel, select Realms → def; then select the **Authentication** tab.
8. Click the **Allowed Protocols...** button. A screen similar to the one below appears:



9. In this example we use MS-CHAP for the allowed authentication protocol.
10. You return to the *ClearBox Server Configurator* screen. In the left panel select Data Sources → users.
11. In the main panel of the screen that comes up, there is an MS Access entry field with a path specifying the *general.mdb* file. The accounts contained in this file are generated through MS Access.

The CC2000 Administrator gets this information to use in the *Adding an External Authentication Server* procedure (see *RADIUS and TACACS+*, page 152). In this example, the fields would be filled in as follows:

IP: 10.0.0.100

Port: 49

Authentication type: MSCHAP

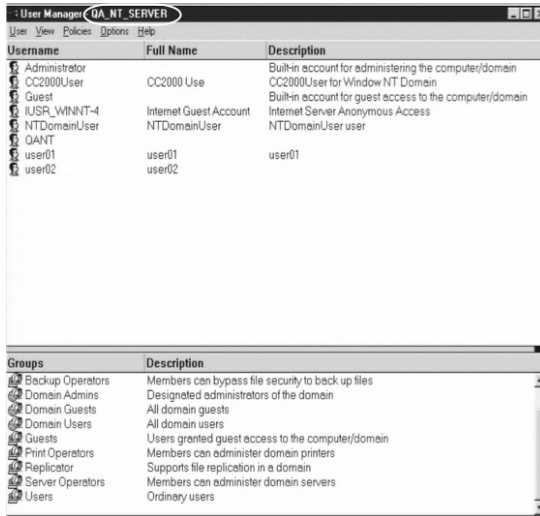
Shared secret: the password that you set when you installed the ClearBox RADIUS TACACS+ Server

After the TACACS+ Authentication server has been added, when the CC2000 Administrator adds user accounts, he must use the names that were configured in the TACACS+ server's *general.mdb* file.

NT Domain Settings Example

In this example the external server is Microsoft Windows NT Domain; its Server IP is QA_NT_SERVER. Configure NT Domain as follows:

Open Start → Programs → Administrative Tools (Common) → User Manager for Domains. A screen, similar to the one below, appears:



The CC2000 Administrator gets this information to use in the *Adding an External Authentication Server* procedure (see *Windows NT Domain*, page 153). In this example, the fields would be filled in as follows:

Server IP: QA_NT_SERVER

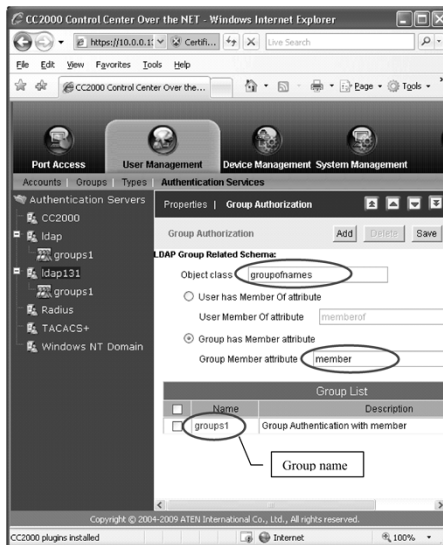
After the NT Domain server has been added, when the CC2000 Administrator adds user accounts, he must use the names that were configured under *User Manager for Domains*.

LDAP Group Authorization Setting Examples

Example 1

In this example the external server is OpenLDAP on Windows Server 2003 as shown in the LDAP/LDAPS Settings Example on page 281.

1. Under the CC2000 User Manager tab, select Authentication Services → Authentication Servers.
2. Select the OpenLDAP server; then click **Group Authorization**.
3. Click the *Group has Member attribute* radio button.
4. Click **Add** (at the top-right of the panel).
5. In this example add the **groups1** group. The screen should look similar to the one below:



The OpenLDAP administrator uses this name (*groups1* in our example) to create a group under OpenLDAP with the same name as the one just created on the CC2000 server, as follows:

1. Open the *core.schema* file. The default settings we are interested in are as follows:

attributetype (2.5.4.31 NAME '*member*'

DESC 'RFC2256: member of a group'

SUP distinguishedName)

objectclass (2.5.6.9 NAME '*groupOfNames*'

DESC 'RFC2256: a group of names (DNs)'

SUP top STRUCTURAL

MUST (*member* \$ cn)

MAY (businessCategory \$ seeAlso \$ owner \$ ou \$ o \$ description))

2. Edit the *cc2000ldap.ldif* file to add a definition for *groups1* and have cc2000 user accounts fall under *groups1*, as follows:

dn: cn=*groups1*,ou=groups,dc=aten,dc=com

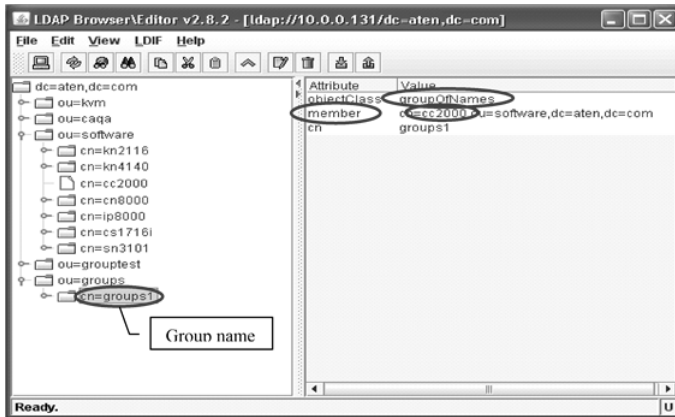
objectclass: *groupofnames*

member: cn=*cc2000*,ou=software,dc=aten,dc=com

cn: *groups1*

-
- Note:**
1. The entry after dn: cn= should be the name of an actual group created under Group Authorization (see , page 156) on the CC2000 server.
 2. The entry after objectclass: should be consistent with the name that was entered for the Object class when the group was created on the CC2000 server. Change the default entry in this file to match.
 3. The entry after *member*: cn= should be an actual user login name.
-

3. You can check the group definition with LDAP Browser. You should see a screen similar to the one below:



4. The above example has added a member – cc2000 – to the groups1 group. To add additional members to the group, edit the file to include them. For example:

member: cn=cc2000-1,ou=software,dc=aten,dc=com

member: cn=cc2000-2,ou=software,dc=aten,dc=com

Once these procedures are completed, CC2000 users who are authenticated through the LDAP/LDAPS server, are authorized according to the permissions assigned to the group.

Example 2

By default OpenLDAP only supports the *Group has Member attribute* setting for the group related schema – this was the setting used in Example 1.

An alternative setting used by other LDAP servers – *User has Member Of attribute* – can also be supported under OpenLDAP by extending the schema.

In this example the external server is OpenLDAP on Windows Server 2003 as shown in the LDAP/LDAPS Settings Example on page 281.

1. Under the CC2000 User Manager tab, select Authentication Services → Authentication Servers.
2. Select the OpenLDAP server; then click **Group Authorization**.
3. Click the *User has Member Of attribute* radio button.

4. Click **Add** (at the top-right of the panel).
5. In this example add the **groups1** group. The screen should look similar to the one below:

The screenshot shows a window titled "Properties | Group Authorization". Inside, there's a "Group Settings" section with a dropdown menu set to "group". Below this, there are two radio button options: "User has Member Of attribute" (selected) and "Group has Member attribute". The "User has Member Of attribute" option has a text field labeled "User Member Of attribute" with the value "memberof". The "Group has Member attribute" option has a text field labeled "Group Member attribute" with the value "member". At the bottom, there's a table with the header "Authorized Users' RDN" and a row with a checkbox, the text "RDN", and the text "Include Users".

The OpenLDAP administrator uses this name (*groups1* in our example) to create a group under OpenLDAP with the same name as the one just created on the CC2000 server, as follows:

1. Open the *core.schema* file. Extend the schema as follows:
attributetype (1.2.840.113556.1.2.102
 NAME '**memberof**'
 DESC 'RFC2256: member of a group'
 SUP distinguishedName)
objectclass (1.2.840.113556.1.5.9
 NAME '**person**'
 SUP organizationalPerson
 STRUCTURAL
 MUST (cn)
 MAY (userPassword \$ description \$ sn \$ mail \$ **memberof**))
2. Edit the *cc2000ldap.ldif* file to add a user account to the *groups1* group, as follows:
 dn: cn=**cc2000test**,ou=software,dc=aten,dc=com
 objectclass: top
 objectclass: **person**
 objectclass: organizationalPerson
 cn: cc2000test

sn: cc2000test

memberof: cn=*groups1*,ou=groups,dc=aten,dc=com

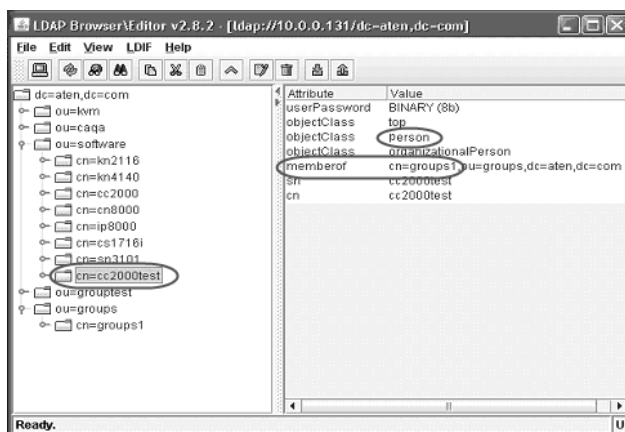
userPassword: password

Note: 1. The entry after dn: cn= should be an actual user login name.

2. The entry after objectclass: should be consistent with the name that was entered for NAME in the extended schema.

3. The entry after memberof: cn= should be the name of an actual group created under Group Authorization (see , page 156) on the CC2000 server.

3. You can check the group definition with LDAP Browser. You should see a screen similar to the one below:



4. Repeat step 2 for each user account that you want to add to the group.

Once these procedures are completed, CC2000 users who are authenticated through the LDAP/LDAPS server, are authorized according to the permissions assigned to the group.

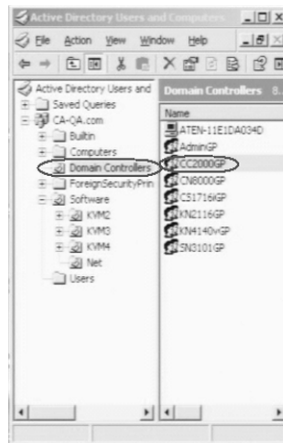
Active Directory Group Authorization Setting Example

In this example the external server is Active Directory on Windows Server 2003 as shown in the Active Directory Settings Example on page 283.

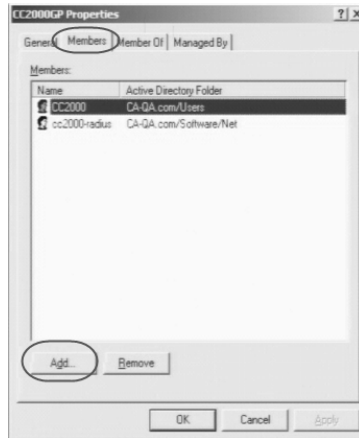
1. Under the CC2000 User Manager tab, select Authentication Services → Authentication Servers.
2. Select the Active Directory server; then click **Group Authorization**.
3. In this example add the **CC2000GP** group.

The Active Directory administrator uses this name (CC2000GP in our example) to create a group under Active Directory with the same name as the one just created on the CC2000 server, as follows:

1. Open Start → Control Panel → Administrative Tools → Active Directory Users and Computers → Domain (CA-QA.com in our example).
2. In the left panel, right click **Domain Controllers**; select **New**; select **Group**.
3. In the dialog that comes up, key in the name of the group (CC2000GP in our example). A window, similar to the one below, appears:



4. In the right panel, right click **CC2000GP**; select **Properties**; select **Members**. A window, similar to the one below, appears:



5. Click **Add**.

The dialog that comes up lets you add members to the group. The members are selected from the accounts found in the *Users* folder (see the left panel of the original screen).

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

Appendix E

SSO HTML Sample Codes

Overview

If *Single Sign On* is enabled, it will allow users from another web application to log in CC2000 automatically through a form-based authentication. An example of the HTML sample codes is in the next section.

SSO HTML Sample Codes

```
<html>

<head><title>Sample page for CC2000 SSO (Single Sign On) Sample</
title></head>

<script language="JavaScript">

<!--
function doLogin()
{
    form1.submit();
}
-->

</script>

<body>
    <table>
        <div align="center">
            <form id="form1" name="form1" method="post" action="https://
10.3.166.65:443/ccadmin/singlesignon.do">

                <!-- Server_IP_port: CC2000 server IP/port (default port could be omitted)
-->

                <tr>

                    <td>
```

[illegible]

```
</form>  
</div>  
</body>  
</html>
```